

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE:

Parts One and Two
in Anishinaabemowin
(Western Ojibwe)

Native Language Instructors' Program
Lakehead University
Thunder Bay, Ontario

Introductory Ojibwe: Parts One and Two in Anishinaabemowin (Western Ojibwe)
©2001, Native Language Instructors' Program, Faculty of Education, Lakehead
University, Thunder Bay, Ontario Canada

The print version of this text and accompanying audio files are available at Lakehead University
Libraries (Chancellor Paterson and Education Libraries) library.lakeheadu.ca

This text has been scanned as part of the Anishinaabemowik - Indigenous Languages Program
Historical Documents Digitization Project, Faculty of Education, Education Library (Thunder Bay
Campus), Lakehead University.



This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-
NoDerivatives 4.0 International License.

To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/4.0/>

Please contact the Faculty of Education, Office of the Dean, Lakehead University, Thunder Bay,
Ontario Canada for additional information or permissions. 807-343-8010 (ext. 8520)

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE: PARTS ONE AND TWO IN ANISHINAABEMOWIN (WESTERN OJIBWE)

Revisions for this version:
Language Consultant
Editorial Assistance:
Typing and Graphics:
Graphic Artist:

Gilbert Deschamps
Agnes Hardy
John O'Meara
Sonya Matson
Bruce Beardy

This book is an adaptation of "Introductory Ojibwe: Parts One and Two in Severn Dialect)," by Tom Beardy.

A special thanks to the late Lena Odjig White for all of her help in making the books in this series a reality and for all of her devotion to the preservation of Native languages.



This publication is based upon "Introductory Ojibwe: Parts One and Two in Severn Dialect," which in turn is based partly on material contained in the following publications:

"Introductory Ojibwe (Severn dialect)" by Mary L. Mitchell,
Lakehead University, Thunder Bay, Ontario
and
SS 509 Conversational Ojibwe (In the Severn Dialect)
Confederation College of Applied Arts and Technology,
P.O. Box 398, Thunder Bay, Ontario

Printed and distributed by:

Lakehead University
Thunder Bay, Ontario
P7B 5E1

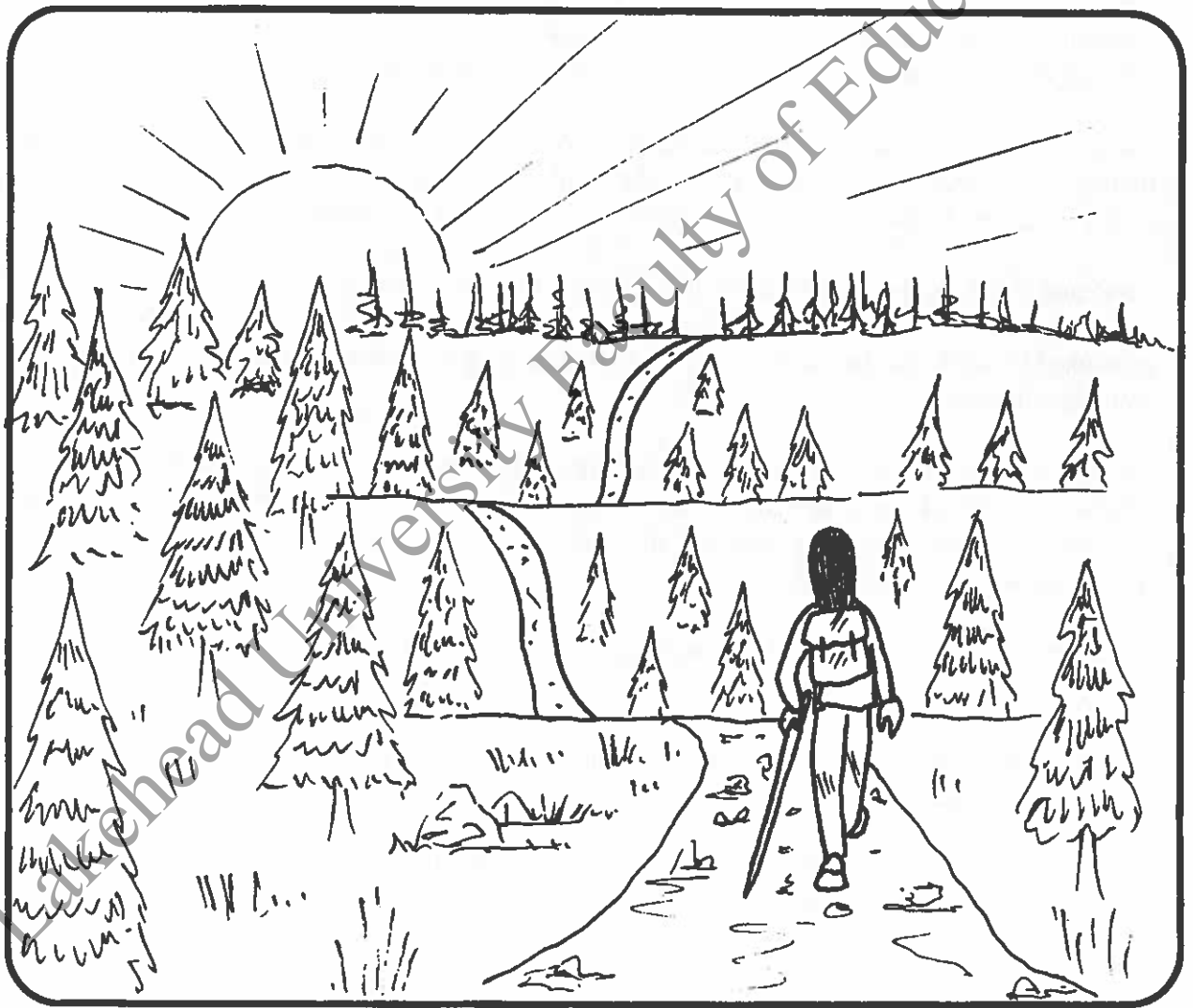
Not to be sold for profit.

© 2001 by the Native Language Instructors' Program, Lakehead University. All rights reserved. No part of this work may be reproduced in any form or by any means without written permission from the Native Language Instructors' Program, Lakehead University.

Some illustrations © 1994, RT Graphics, NM.

Course Description

This is the beginning of a journey in Anishinaabemowin, the language of the Anishinaabe (Ojibwe). This book will introduce students to the language and culture of the indigenous people of Northern Ontario. Students will learn basic vocabulary through listening, speaking, reading, and writing in Ojibwe. Students will develop basic communication skills in Ojibwe through study and practice. They will also become familiar with the traditional values and culture, which are vital when working with indigenous people.



**LET'S CONTINUE OUR JOURNEY UP THE RIVER
TO DISCOVER ANISHINAABEMOWIN**

What is Anishinaabemowin?

Anishinaabemowin is the indigenous name for the Ojibwe language. Anishinaabemowin is spoken in several different DIALECTS throughout Canada and parts of the United States. In this book we are focussing on the dialect of Anishinaabemowin which is spoken in Ontario, in the area between Thunder Bay, Ontario, at the west end of Lake Superior, and Sault Ste Marie, Ontario. Similar dialects of Anishinaabemowin are spoken in the Lake of the Woods area, in the area between Thunder Bay and the Ontario-Manitoba border, and also in Minnesota.

This book was prepared in conjunction with the Native Language Instructors' Program (NLIP) at Lakehead University in Thunder Bay. For convenience the Anishinaabemowin dialect being studied here is sometimes called 'Western Ojibwe,' in order to distinguish the varieties of Anishinaabemowin spoken in Ontario west of Sault Ste Marie from those spoken in southern Ontario. In the book, however, we will use the term Anishinaabemowin.

Some of the communities where the dialect of Anishinaabemowin being studied here is spoken include Rocky Bay and Gull Bay, on the shores of Lake Nipigon. Other communities include Pays Plat, Pic Heron, Mobert, Lake Helen, Batchewana Bay, and Whitesands.

Because there are many different dialects of Anishinaabemowin, you may find that Anishinaabe people from other areas use words, pronunciation, and spelling that are somewhat different from the ones used in this book. But at the same time there are many similarities between all dialects of Anishinaabemowin.

If you are interested in more detailed information about the dialects of Anishinaabemowin, you may wish to consult the following book. Although much of the discussion is technical in nature and requires some knowledge of linguistics, there are many maps and lists of words which may be interesting to the general reader.

J. Randolph Valentine. 1994. *Ojibwe Dialect Variation*. PhD dissertation, University of Texas, Austin.

Another useful reference which is recommended for students using this book is this dictionary of a closely related dialect of Anishinaabemowin spoken in Minnesota.

Earl Nyholm and John Nichols. 1995. *A Concise Dictionary of Minnesota Ojibwe*. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press.

What is in this course?

There are two units of study. This book is intended as an introduction to Anishinaabemowin. In these units, you will be given instructions in English and guided through exercises. Many of the answers are included in the book, so you can check your work. At the back of the book there are glossaries which list all the words used in this book. You are encouraged to listen carefully to your instructor, and to other speakers of Anishinaabemowin, who can introduce you to new words and expressions.

But these are only a beginning — to learn more Anishinaabemowin please be certain to learn from speakers of Anishinaabemowin in your community.

By the end of the course of studies, you will be able to carry on a short conversation in Anishinaabemowin.

SUBJECT OUTLINE

Subject Name: Introductory Ojibwe (Western dialect)

Subject Number: OJ 1010 Part One and OJ 1012 Part Two

Subject Description:

The aim of this subject is to provide students with the skills necessary to speak Anishinaabemowin. In this functional and conversational program, students will learn basic vocabulary through listening, speaking, writing and understanding.

Objectives:

- to understand through conversation the structure of Anishinaabemowin.
- to listen with understanding and to converse at a basic level in Anishinaabemowin.
- to pronounce words accurately.
- to demonstrate effective use of Anishinaabemowin in culturally appropriate contexts.

What is this subject about?

This is an introductory course for students who wish to learn to speak the Anishinaabemowin dialect. It is designed to give practice in conversation using everyday situations that students might encounter as they live and work in a Native community. It can be used to practice Native language by students of Native ancestry or by students from other backgrounds. Learning a Native language can lead to a better appreciation and understanding of the whole society who uses it. Both Native and non-Native learners can gain a sense of the traditions, the customs, and both the historical and modern view of Native life.

Where should the learning begin?

There is no right or wrong dialect. What is **important** is to keep the **Native language** alive and growing in use. Perhaps then, it is **important** to become familiar with **one dialect** of the language to start, and it would be simple from there to learn the differences in sounds of words to learn other dialects. Appreciating the dialects of other communities takes a trained ear and a curiosity to understand one another. Perhaps this first step will help to bring a stronger unity among our Native communities to keep alive the Native culture.

Although people in their own communities must be the ones to decide how to carry on their language through the generations, this advanced course of studies uses Anishinaabemowin.

Writing Anishinaabemowin

In this section we discuss the writing system which is used in this book. First there is a discussion of the basic letters and combinations of letters which are used to write Anishinaabemowin. Following this there is a discussion of some issues which arise in writing and reading Anishinaabemowin. You do not need to read all the information at once. You may find it helpful to read it over from time to time as you progress through the course. Some of the topics discussed here will become more understandable to you after you have been exposed to the language for some time.

The Writing System

In this book Anishinaabemowin is written with Roman (alphabetic) letters. Anishinaabemowin uses some of the letters used in writing English. However Anishinaabemowin is written in a way that is more consistent than English writing. Although English writing is basically fairly regular, there are enough irregularities found in English writing that we would not want to import them into Anishinaabemowin writing. When we use letters or combinations of letters in Anishinaabemowin, these consistently represent the same sound or combination of sounds. Each letter corresponds to a certain sound, and is only used to represent that sound.

Sounds in Anishinaabemowin are divided into two basic types: VOWELS and CONSONANTS.

Vowels

There are seven vowel sounds in Anishinaabemowin. Vowels are divided into two types: LONG vowels and SHORT vowels. Long vowels take longer to say. With one exception, there is a long vowel corresponding to each short vowel. In elementary school you may have learned that certain English vowels were long and others were short. However, the way that vowels are analysed as long and short in Anishinaabemowin is different from the way they are presented in English, and you should ignore the English usage.

Here is a chart of the long and short vowels. You will learn how they are pronounced in the following paragraphs.

LONG SHORT

ii	i
oo	o
aa	a
e	

You can see that the first three long vowels are represented by writing them double. Each is still one vowel, though. Further, each of the first three long vowels has a corresponding short vowel, and each short vowel is written with a single letter. The last long vowel, e, has no corresponding short vowel. Because there is no need to indicate a distinction between a long and short e sound, the long e is written with a single letter.

You will find that some of the letters do not represent what we might expect them to in English. But remember that when we use these letters to write words in Anishinaabemowin, they are Anishinaabemowin letters! So the letters represent Anishinaabemowin sounds and you should not expect them to be pronounced the same way they are pronounced in English. Every language has its own rules for how letters are to be pronounced, and Anishinaabemowin is no exception.

Here are some examples of Anishinaabemowin words that contain long vowels. The examples show the vowel in three positions: beginning, middle, and end of a word. The vowel in question in each word is written in bold type. The approximate English equivalent of the Ojibwe vowel sound is also given. Most of the words given in this section are also used in the book.

Vowel	Ojibwe word	Approximate English Equivalent
ii	i idog 'supposedly' niin 'I, me' anokii 'he/she is working'	seat
oo	oo jii 'fly' mooz 'moose' giigoo 'finish'	note, toot
aa	aa kozi 'he/she is sick' anishinaabe 'native person' maajaa 'he/she leaves'	father

e	emikwaan 'spoon' bekaa 'slowly' giiwe 'he/she goes home'	bed
----------	--	-----

Now here are some examples of words that contain short vowels.

Vowel	Ojibwe word	Approximate English Equivalent
i	ikwe 'woman' nika 'Canada goose' aakozi 'he/she is sick'	sit
o	onaagan 'plate' animosh 'dog' bijiinaago 'yesterday'	put
a	abwi 'paddle' gaye 'and, also' makwa 'bear'	but

Consonants

There are more consonants than vowels in Anishinaabemowin. All the letters used to write consonants are also found in English. Some have a pronunciation very similar to that which they have in English, while others are quite different.

The consonant letters used to write Anishinaabemowin are: *b, d, g, ' , j, k, m, n, p, s, sh, t, w, y, z, zh*. Not used are *c, f, q, v, x*. The letter *h* is used in only a very small number of words. The letters *l* and *r* do occur in some word borrowed from English or French.

Some of the letters used for consonants are virtually the same as ones used in English: **m, n, w, and y**. They should not cause you any difficulty. The sounds **m, n** and **w** can appear in any position in a word: beginning, middle, and end.

Ojibwe	Ojibwe examples	English equivalent
m	makizin 'shoe' o'omaa 'here' doodam 'he/she goes something'	man

n	nagamo 'he/she is singing' bine 'partridge' waakaa'igan 'house'	name
w	waasa 'far' gaawiin 'no' wiindamaw 'tell him!'	win

The sound **y** usually does not appear at the beginning of a word.

Ojibwe	Ojibwe examples	English equivalent
y	geyaabi 'still' ninday 'my dog!'	yes

Anishinaabemowin has one letter (and sound) which does not correspond to any letter in English. This is the apostrophe ('), which in Anishinaabemowin represents the sound called a GLOTTAL STOP. In English the glottal stop sometimes occurs: listen carefully to the pause between the two syllables of 'oh-oh.' But in English there is no letter to represent this sound.

Phonetic	Ojibwe examples	English equivalent
'	mazina'igan 'book'	oh-oh

The sound **h** normally does not occur in Anishinaabemowin words. But you will find it in the word that means 'okay.'

Phonetic	Ojibwe examples	English equivalent
h	ahaaw 'okay'	him

The remaining consonants are divided into two series, which are called the WEAK consonants and the STRONG consonants. The weak and strong consonants come in pairs.

WEAK	b	d	g	j	z	zh
STRONG	p	t	k	ch	s	sh

The strong consonants normally do not appear at the beginning of a word, only in the middle or at the end of a word. The weak consonants may occur in any position in a word: beginning, middle, end.

Notice also that in Anishinaabemowin the sequence of letters **sh**, **ch**, and **zh** are used to represent single sounds, even though two letters are used for each.

The following table presents examples of the weak consonants. The second English equivalent sound is the one that occurs between vowel (or between **n** or **m** and a vowel sound; see the discussion below in the 'Spelling Notes' section).

Sound	Ojibwe examples	English equivalent
b	bine 'partridge' nibi 'water' wewiib 'hurry'	pit, bit
d	debwe 'really' badaka'igan 'fork' wiisagad 'pepper'	time, dime
g	giiwe 'he/she goes home' nagamo 'he/she is singing' biindig 'inside'	chip, judge
j	jiimaan 'canoe' agwajiing 'outside' amanj igo 'don't know'	keep, game
z	zaaga'igan 'lake' gwiiwizens 'boy' waabooz 'rabbit'	sit, zip
zh	zhiishiib 'duck' bezhig 'one' biizh 'bring him!'	ship, measure

The following table presents examples of the strong consonants. The strong consonants appear in the middle of a word or at the end of a word, but do not appear at the beginning of a word.

Sounds	Ojibwe examples
p	apii 'when' nimbaap 'I laugh'
t	eta 'only'
k	ikido 'he/she says' amik 'beaver'
ch	waasechigan 'window' miigwech 'thank you'
s	asin 'stone' wiiyaas 'meat'
sh	mashi 'yet' dash 'but, and'

A sequence of two strong consonants may also occur in the middle of a word or at the end of a word, but not at the beginning of a word.

Sounds	Ojibwe examples
sk	miskwi 'blood'
shp	ishpiming 'above'
sht	jiishta'igan 'broom'
shk	weshkad 'long ago' giiyaashk 'seagull'

SPELLING NOTES

These notes discuss several aspects of Anishinaabemowin spelling and pronunciation. You may find it helpful to read them over as you become more familiar with the materials in the course, and as you become more accustomed to hearing Anishinaabemowin words and sentences.

The pronunciation of words in Anishinaabemowin does not always consistently match the spelling

of words in this book. There are several sources of variation in pronunciation which may make the pronunciation of words different from their spelling. Variations in pronunciation affect both vowels and consonants. You may find that some speakers have slightly different pronunciations of some words, and even that a single speaker may vary in the way that they pronounce particular words. In this book the way that words are written does not reflect these different types of variation. We have attempted to use a more consistent spelling which can be used by a wide variety of learners and speakers. However as a result language learners will need to listen carefully to their instructors and to other speakers of Anishinaabemowin, and follow their pronunciation.

1. VOWELS

The pronunciation of short vowels is subject to several sources of variation. Some of the more common ones are summarized in this section.

(a) Dropping of short vowels

A common feature of the dialect of Anishinaabemowin being spoken here is that SHORT VOWELS are frequently dropped. That is, they are not pronounced. Note that long vowels are not affected by this phenomenon. Dropping of vowels is common in everyday speech; when individuals are speaking more slowly they may drop vowels less frequently. Vowel dropping occurs at the beginning of words or internal to a word; the type of vowel dropping being discussed here does not occur at the end of a word.

Vowel dropping is common at the beginning of a word. In the first column we give the full form of the word, without vowel dropping. In the second column we give the form of the word with vowel dropping. In the second column, the location of the vowel which is dropped is marked with an underline (); this use of underlining appears only in this section.

Full Pronunciation	Everyday Pronunciation	Translation
agwajiing	<u> </u> gwajiing	‘outside’
inini	<u> </u> nini	‘man’
ikwe	<u> </u> kwe	‘woman’

Short vowels may also dropped internal to a word.

Full Pronunciation	Everyday Pronunciation	Translation
gwiiwizens	gwiiw_zens	'boy'
aapiji	aap_ji	'very, quite'

As noted above, in this book we write all words in their full form, including all short vowels. This makes it easier for students to recognize that there is a common word underlying the variations in pronunciation which you may hear.

(b) Modification of short vowels.

Apart from the dropping of short vowels, if you listen to different speakers of Anishinaabemowin you may notice that speakers may pronounce certain words with a different vowel. In particular, where the general pronunciation of a word begins with the short vowel **i**, you may find that some speakers will have a short **a** sound at the beginning instead. Compare the first vowel of the words in the next two columns. **Bold** type highlights the vowels under discussion.

General Pronunciation	Everyday Pronunciation	
i nini	anini	'man'
i kwe	akwe	'woman'

(c) Modification of short vowels word-internally.

You may also find that sometimes the pronunciation of a short vowel which appears internal to a word may change: sometimes one short vowel is used, and sometimes another. In these examples the vowel under discussion is in **bold** type; note also that in the word for 'forty' the second vowel is often dropped, marked here with an underline.

**General
Pronunciation**

gisayenh

niimidana

**Everyday
Pronunciation**

gisiyenh

niim_dina

'your older brother'

'forty'

Listen carefully to your instructor and other speakers of Anishinaabemowin, and follow their models for pronunciation.

2. PERSONAL PREFIXES

The pronunciation of the personal prefixes which are used on nouns and verbs is also subject to variation.

(a) Personal Prefixes

Anishinaabemowin has three personal prefixes which appear on verbs and nouns. Here are the basic forms of the three prefixes.

Prefix

ni-

gi-

o-

Meaning

'I, me'

'you'

'he, she'

Please note that in this section we write the prefixes followed by a hyphen, to indicate that these are only word parts, not words.

The pronunciation of the prefixes may vary depending upon whether the word the prefix is added to begins with a VOWEL or a CONSONANT. Here are examples of the prefixes added to the word **makizin** 'shoe.' For convenience, in the examples the prefix is in **bold** type.

Ojibwe Word

nimakizin

gimakizin

Meaning

'my shoe'

'your shoe'

omakizin

'his/her shoe'

When the prefixes are added to a word that begins with a VOWEL, the sound **d** appears as a 'connector' between the prefix and the main word. These examples show the prefixes added to the word **aazhogan** 'bridge.'

Ojibwe Word	Meaning
nindaazhogan ¹	'my bridge'
gidaazhogan	'your bridge'
odaazhogan	'his/her bridge'

(b) The First-Person Prefix

The pronunciation of the personal prefix **ni-** 'I, me,' which is also called the 'first-person personal prefix,' changes depending upon the initial sound of the word it is added to.

For words that begin with the sounds *m*, *s*, *sh*, or *w* the prefix stays the same.

Ojibwe Word	Meaning
nisayenh	'my older brother'
nishiime	'my younger sibling'
niwiisin	'I eat'

If the word begins with the sound *b*, the sound *m* is added between the prefix and the beginning of the word. As well, speakers of Anishinaabemowin will often not pronounce the initial part of the prefix itself. In this book, the variation in pronunciation is reflected by placing the first consonant of the prefix in brackets. It is advisable to listen carefully to your instructor to find out just how he or she pronounces these words.

1. Further information on the pronunciation of the first-person prefix when added to words that begin with a vowel is given on the following page.

Ojibwe Word	Meaning
(n)imbaap	'I laugh'

Similar modifications of pronunciation occur when the first-person prefix is added to nouns or verbs that begin with the sounds *d, g, j, z, zh* (recall that these are the sounds referred to as the WEAK consonants). In these cases the sound *n* is inserted between the prefix and the beginning of the word, and it is often the case that the initial part of the prefix *ni-* is dropped. Again, the first letter of the prefix is written in brackets to reflect the variation in pronunciation.

Ojibwe Word	Meaning
(n)indaanis	'my daughter'
(n)ingozis	'my son'
(n)injiimaan	'my canoe'
(n)inezgiz	'I'm afraid'
(n)inzhaaganaashiim	'I speak English'

As noted above, when the first-person prefix is added to a word that begins with a vowel, the sound *d* is added between the prefix and the beginning of the word. As well, the sound *n* is added between the prefix and the inserted *d*. Here we will repeat the example already given above of *ni-* added to the noun **aazhogan** 'bridge,' which begins with a vowel.

Ojibwe Word	Meaning
(n)indaazhogan	'my bridge'

(c) The Second-Person Prefix.

The second person prefix 'you' has the form *gi-*, or *gid-* when added to a word that begins with a vowel. When added to a word that begins with a *g* the prefix is often not pronounced. In these cases the prefix is still written — you should listen carefully to your instructor and follow their pronunciation.

Ojibwe Word	Meaning
gigiwe	'you are going home'

3. OTHER VARIATION IN CONSONANTS

There are other variations in the pronunciation of consonants which occur. You will find, particularly at the beginning of a word, that when a WEAK consonant is followed by a short vowel and a STRONG consonant, the weak consonant and the vowel will not be pronounced (look at the chart on page vi to remind yourself of which consonants are weak and which are strong). In the examples an underline is used to indicate where the consonant and vowel have been deleted.

General Pronunciation	Everyday Pronunciation	
gakina	__kina	'all, every'
gakiwe	__kiwe	'portage'

As with other such cases, we write the word in its full form, and you can listen to your instructor to hear how they pronounce these words.

CONTENTS UNIT ONE

Lesson One:	“What’s On The Kitchen Table?”..... “Pass the Bannock Please.” - Sounding Syllables - Spelling System - Nouns: Animate and Inanimate - Singular and Plural	1
Lesson Two:	“How Much/Many?” - Numbers 1-24 - How many are there? (animate) - How many are there? (inanimate) - Singular and Plural	10
Lesson Three:	“What is Your Name?” - My name is... - I am from... - Some Useful Phrase - Translations	24
Lesson Four:	“Command!” - Imperatives; singular and Plural - Word Search - Locatives - Some Useful Particles	30
Lesson Five:	“What is He/she Doing?” - Intransitive Verbs - H/she is Singing - Making Verbs Negative - Personal Pronouns, singular - Questions and Answers - Some Useful Particles and Translation	45
Lesson Six:	“What Time Is It?” - Understanding and Practice Writing - Listening and Speaking - Understanding and Practice Writing - Listening and Speaking - Understanding and Practice Writing - Listening and Speaking - Understanding and Practice Writing - Exercise Review Test	56
Review the Words You Know Lessons 1-6.....		67
Translation Section Lessons 1-6.....		70

CONTENTS UNIT TWO

Lesson One:	Singular and Plural Nouns and Verbs.....	79
	- "What are they doing?"	
	- Translation	
	- The Voluntative	
	- Some useful expressions	
	- Yesterday, today and tomorrow	
	- Using the tenses	
	- New vocabulary	
Lesson Two:	Plural Pronouns.....	93
	- Inclusive and exclusive	
	- Let's talk around the table	
	- Dialogues	
	- Diminutives	
	- Introduction to Transitive Verbs	
	- "How is the Weather?"	
	- Some useful expressions	
Lesson Three:	Introduction to the Obviative.....	112
	- Forming the Obviative	
	- More about verb types	
	- Introduction to possession	
	- New vocabulary	
	- Understanding different classes of words	
	- Introduction to kinship :My family:	
	- Additional vocabulary (optional)	
	- More about TA verbs	
	- New vocabulary	
Lesson Four:	Scenery and Useful Articles.....	131
	- Reading and Understanding	
	- Translation	
	- Mini-dialogues	
	- Introduction to Preverbs	
	- More Preverbs	
	- New Vocabulary and Expressions	
	- Introduction to the Dubitative	
	- More Mini-dialogues	
Lesson Five:	The Sun and The Moon.....	143
	- Introduction to the Preterit	
	- Dibaajimo	
	- Introduction to the pejorative	
	- Preterit, Pejorative, and Diminutive	
	- Map exercises	
Lesson Six:	Unit 1 Review Lessons 1-6.....	153
	- Twenty-four articles	
	- Using numbers	
	- Using numbers in verb forms	
	- May I introduce myself?	

- Imperatives and Locatives	
- Intransitive verbs (vai)	
- What time is it?	
Unit 2 Review Lessons 1-5.....	157
- What are they doing?	
- Voluntatives	
- Vocabulary and diminutives	
- Transitive verbs	
- How is the weather?	
- Some useful expression	
- Obviatives	
- Possessive nouns	
- More about TA verbs	
- Scenery and useful articles	
- Vocabulary Expressions	
- Certain and uncertain	
- More Inanimate Intransitive verbs (VII)	
- Preterit and geographical terms	
Review the Words You Know Lessons 1 - 5.....	166
Translation Section Lessons 1 - 6.....	169
Guide to the Glossaries.....	203
Anishinaabemowin - English.....	214
English - Anishinaabemowin.....	234

Part One



Migizi

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 1

Exercise A

What's on the Kitchen Table?

Listen carefully as your instructor says these words. Each word will be repeated three or four times.
English translation on page 70.



INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 1

Exercise B

In this exercise, there are 24 numbered pictures. Accompanying the words is a small box to the left of the word. Using a pencil, write the number which matches the picture in the appropriate box.


☐ wiiyaas

☐ giigoo

☐ mookomaan

☐ zhiiwitaagan

☐ nibi

☐ badaka'igan

☐ minikwaajigan

☐ opin

☐ waabooz

☐ zhiishiib

☐ bimide

☐ abwewin

☐ emikwaanens¹
☐ nitiiwakik

☐ onaagan

☐ okaadaak

☐ wiisagad

☐ bakwezhiganikaan

☐ doodooshaaboo

☐ waawan

☐ akik

☐ bine

☐ napenh

☐ looloot

¹ The term **emikwaanens** is used for a 'teaspoon'; the general word for 'spoon' is **emikwaan**.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 1

In the Native Language, two different words are used when asking for an article to be brought, or passed to you. The language has a structural rule that divides all nouns into two classes, called **GENDER**. One gender is called **ANIMATE**. In this gender, are found all living things, animals, birds, reptiles, bugs, people, etc., and also some other things such as stars, tobacco, drums, fishnets, and kettles that we don't usually think of as living. The other gender is called **INANIMATE**, and in it are found all the nouns that are not animate.

Since there is no way to figure out whether a noun is animate or inanimate, you will just have to remember each one.

You have already learned the gender of 24 nouns. If you say "biizh" with a noun, it's because it's an animate noun. If you say "biidoon" it's because the noun is inanimate. For writing and thinking practice, you may now rewrite all 24 nouns with either "biizh" (animate) or "biidoon" (inanimate).



Miigwan

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 1

Exercise C

1. In this exercise you will need to remember the gender of each of the numbered items below. For each one, in your notebook write the sentence that means "Bring____", and write the gender of the noun in brackets after the sentence. The first two responses have been done for you.

For example:

1 - Biidoon wiyaas (ni).

2 - Biizh giigoo (na).

- | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 1. wiyaas * | 9. waaboos | 17. wiisagad |
| 2. giigoo * | 10. zhiishiib | 18. bakwezhiiganikaan |
| 3. mookomaan | 11. bimide | 19. doodooshaaboo |
| 4. zhiiwitaagan | 12. abwewin | 20. waawan |
| 5. nibi | 13. emikwaanens | 21. akik |
| 6. badaka'igan | 14. nitiiwakik | 22. bine |
| 7. minikwaajigan | 15. onaagan | 23. napenh |
| 8. opin | 16. okaadaak | 24. looloot |

2. In this exercise you will need to refer to the 24 numbered pictures in Unit 1, Lesson 1, Exercise B. For each picture write the sentence that means "Bring____" and write the gender on the same line. The first two responses have been done for you.

Gender	Gender
1.	13.
2. *Biizh giigoo na	14.
3.	15.
4.	16. *Biidoon wiyaas ni
5.	17.
6.	18.
7.	19.
8.	20.
9.	21.
10.	22.
11.	23.
12.	24.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 1

Exercise D

Using the language that you have learned:

You now know the names of 24 items often used on the kitchen table and how to ask for them. The secret to learning the language well will be to USE what you learn whenever you get the chance.

In this exercise, work in pairs taking turns asking for an article to be brought, or passed to you using the word either "biizh or biidoon". Individual articles in picture form will be provided by the instructor for this exercise.

Exercise E

Here are two listening exercises to work on:

Assemble all the articles (or pictures of the articles) you see at the beginning of this lesson.

spoon	salt	pepper	frying pan	rabbit	bread
knife	fork	duck	pot	porridge	plate
egg	milk	cup	fish	meat	carrot
potato	teakettle	water	bannock	partridge	lard

Reading and writing:

Here is a list of all the articles you have learned, given in mixed order. Use the numbered pictures on page 1 to match up numbers and letters in the spaces below.

(a) wiiyaas	(i) waabooz	(q) wiisagad
(b) giigoo	(j) zhiishiiib	(r) bakwezighiganikaan
(c) mookomaan	(k) bimide	(s) doodooshaaboo
(d) zhiiwitaagan	(l) abwewin	(t) waawan
(e) nibi	(m) emikwaanens	(u) akik
(f) badaka'igan	(n) nitiiwakik	(v) bine
(g) minikwaajigan	(o) onaagan	(w) napenh
(h) opin	(p) okaadaak	(x) looloot

- | | | | |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 7. _____ | 13. _____ | 19. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 8. _____ | 14. _____ | 20. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 9. _____ | 15. _____ | 21. _____ |
| 4. _____ | 10. _____ | 16. _____ | 22. _____ |
| 5. _____ | 11. _____ | 17. _____ | 23. _____ |
| 6. _____ | 12. _____ | 18. _____ | 24. _____ |

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 1

Exercise F

For review, listen carefully to your instructor say these following words, and imitate what you hear. You can also practise saying these words with your partner.

- | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| (1) onaagan | (9) nibi | (17) napenh |
| (2) minikwaajigan | (10) nitiiwakik | (18) waawan |
| (3) mookomaan | (11) akik | (19) doodooshaaboo |
| (4) emikwaanens | (12) giigoo | (20) abwewin |
| (5) badaka'igan | (13) bakwezhiganikaan | (21) looloot |
| (6) zhiiwitaagan | (14) bine | (22) opin |
| (7) wiisagad | (15) waabooz | (23) okaadaak |
| (8) bimide | (16) wiiyaas | (24) zhiishiib |

Exercise G

Listen carefully as your instructor says these words. Notice how they can be broken down into syllables. To help you identify the syllables we have written a space between each one.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| (1) o naa gan | (9) ni bi | (17) na penh |
| (2) mi ni kwaa ji gan | (10) ni tiw a kik | (18) waa wan |
| (3) moo ko maan | (11) a kik | (19) doo doo shaa boo |
| (4) e mi kwaa nens | (12) a bwe win | (20) gii goo |
| (5) ba da ka'i gan | (13) ba kwe zhi ga ni kaan | (21) loo loot |
| (6) zhii wi taa gan | (14) bi ne | (22) o pin |
| (7) wii sa gad | (15) waa booz | (23) o kaa daak |
| (8) bi mi de | (16) wii yaas | (24) zhii shiib |

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 1

Exercise H

For each of the following words, fill in the missing letters. Then match up the pictures with the words by writing the number which corresponds to each picture beside the correctly spelled word.

☐ _ i _ e

☐ _ _ ni _ waa _ i _ _ _

☐ _ a _ wez _ i _ _ ik _ _ n

☐ _ ii _ _ _ _ d

☐ _ b _ _ _ i _

☐ _ _ ii _ ii _ _ a _ _ _

☐ l _ _ l _ _ t

☐ a _ i _

☐ _ _ da _ _ ' _ _ a _

☐ _ oo _ _ m _ _ _

☐ e _ _ k _ _ a _ _ n _

☐ _ ib _

☐ _ ii _ aa _

☐ _ oo _ _ _ s _ _ _ b _ _

☐ o _ _ _ g _ _

☐ _ _ ii _ _ t _ _ g _ _

☐ _ aa _ _ z

☐ _ ii _ _ nh

☐ o _ i _

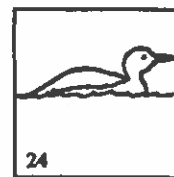
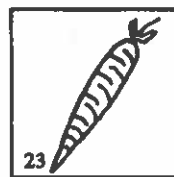
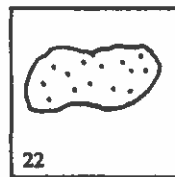
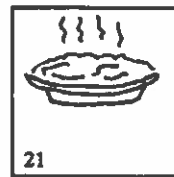
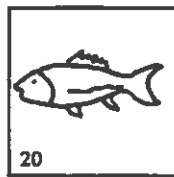
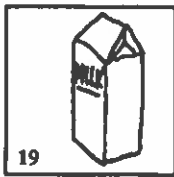
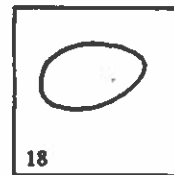
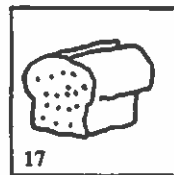
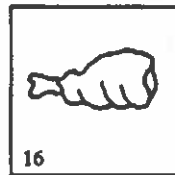
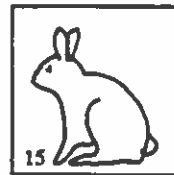
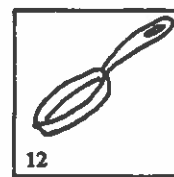
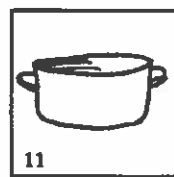
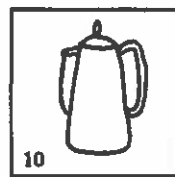
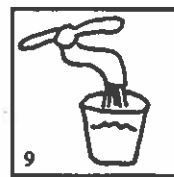
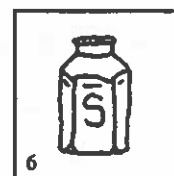
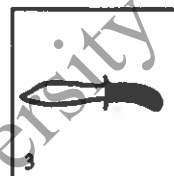
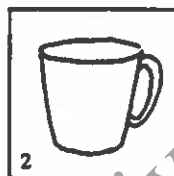
☐ _ aa _ _ n

☐ o _ _ _ d _ _ _

☐ _ _ ii _ _ _ _ b

☐ _ _ _ i _ e

☐ _ a _ enh



INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 1

Exercise I

1. Your instructor will say twelve words from the vocabulary you have learned. Listen carefully as your instructor says each word. Then you can either write the word in a square or make a little drawing in the square to represent the word your instructor said. Check your answers with the instructor.

Listening Exercise: Nouns: Animate and Inanimate

1	2	3
4	5	6
7	8	9
10	11	12

2. Now, go back over each of the words and for each one decide whether you would say "biidoon" or "biizh." Write your answers in the squares.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 1

Exercise J

Look back to the pictures at the beginning of this lesson and listen while your instructor gives the plural forms of these nouns. Did you notice that there are two kinds of “endings” that form the plural?

The ending -n is heard on _____ nouns.

The ending -g is heard on _____ nouns.

The plural endings of “inanimate” nouns are _____, _____, and _____.

The plural endings of “animate” nouns are _____, _____, and _____.

Do the following exercise as shown in the example:

Gender	Noun	Plural	Gender	Noun	Plural
biizh	emikwaanens	-ag		onaagan	
	wiiyaas			nitiiwakik	
	minikwaajigan			zhiishiiib	
	zhiiwitaagan			mookomaan	
	doodooshaaboo			giigoo	
	looloot			badaka'igan	
	bakwezhiganikaan			opin	
	okaadaak			waaboos	
	abwewin			waawan	
	bimide			akik	
	bine			wiisagad	
	nibi			napenh	

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 2

Introduction to Numbers

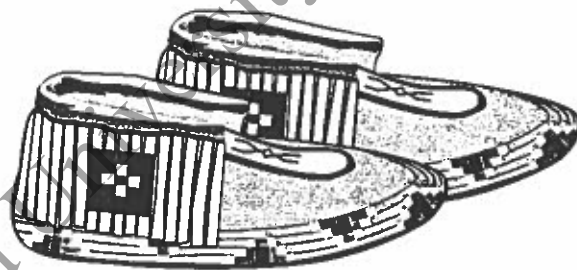
Using numbers is part of daily life. Numbers are found everywhere. Now you will learn the numbers from 1 to 24 in **Anishinaabemowin** (Western Ojibwe). This will be especially useful to you as you will hear the numbers from 1 to 24 constantly in the lessons that follow.

In this exercise, you will be introduced to the numbers 1 to 24 in Anishinaabemowin. After completing these lessons, you will be able to ask the question **Aaniin minik?** ("How much/How many?") and respond appropriately by stating a number from 1 to 24.

1. Look at the numbers on the opposite page.
2. You will hear the Anishinaabemowin words for the numbers from 1 to 24.

Listen as the instructor calls the numbers in the order that they are shown in the pictures. Each number will be repeated three times.

3. Practice makes perfect: Practice until you are sure that you can name each number. You must know them well in order to do the rest of the exercises.



Makizinan

(plural form)

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 2

Exercise A

Listen carefully as your instructor says these words.
The English translations are on page 70.

1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12
13	14	15	16
17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 2

Exercise B

Reading and writing practice:

In this exercise, you will practice recognizing the words in writing for numbers. Listen carefully as your instructor says these words. Notice how they can be broken down into syllables.

Note: The word **ashi** found in many numbers above 'ten' is also pronounced **shi** in informal speech.

Be zhig	Mi daa so ashi ni swi
Nii zhin	Mi daa so ashi nii win
Ni swi	Mi daa so ashi naa nan
Nii win	Mi daa so ashi nin go dwaa swi
Naa nan	Mi daa so ashi nii zhwaaw swi
Nin go dwaa si	Mi daa so ashi ni shwaaw swi
Nii zhwaaw swi	Mi daa so ashi zhaan ga swi
Ni shwaaw swi	Niish ta na
Zhaan ga swi	Niish ta na ashi be zhig
Mi daa swi	Niish ta na ashi nii zhin
Mi daa so ashi be zhig	Niish ta na ashi ni swi
Mi daa so ashi niizhin	Niish ta na ashi naa nan

Exercise C

In this exercise, you will practice pronunciation and recognizing the number words.

1. On the next page are twenty-four boxes labelled A to X. In each box are 5 numbers.
2. The instructor will tell you which row you are to look at, then he/she will call a number in Anishinaabemowin and you are to circle the number that you hear.
3. Remember to use a pencil to mark your answers so that you can try this exercise again if you wish.

* As an example, the answer in Row A have been circled for you.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 2

A

6 10 1 15 ④

B

2 16 19 22 6

C

20 8 12 9 5

D

8 4 11 20 21

E

22 15 2 7 10

F

3 12 9 1 5

G

17 3 9 23 14

H

11 6 16 14 11

I

2 8 18 13 24

J

9 10 24 13 4

K

16 2 19 22 6

L

23 15 3 19 23

M

4 8 11 21 20

N

20 22 12 17 9

O

9 12 3 5 1

P

1 15 6 10 4

Q

16 2 6 11 14

R

5 20 8 12 9

S

10 4 9 13 24

T

2 10 22 15 7

U

15 3 21 23 19

V

23 3 9 17 14

W

17 9 20 12 22

X

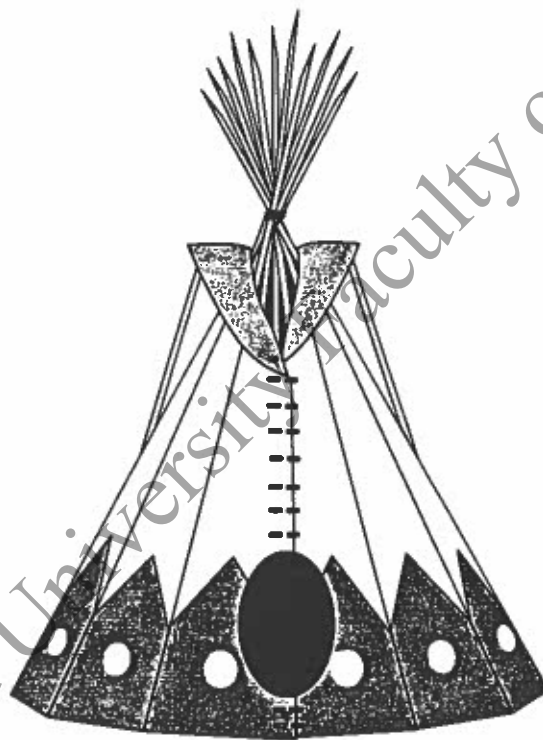
13 24 2 18 8

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 2

Exercise D

This Exercise will give you more practice recognizing words for numbers.

1. On the next page are twenty-four boxes labelled A to X.
2. The instructor will tell you which box to look at. Then he will call the number in Anishinaabemowin and you are to write the number that you hear, (you don't have to write number in Ojibwe).
3. Remember to use a pencil to mark your answers so that you can try this exercise again if you wish.



Wiigiwaam
(Tent)

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 2

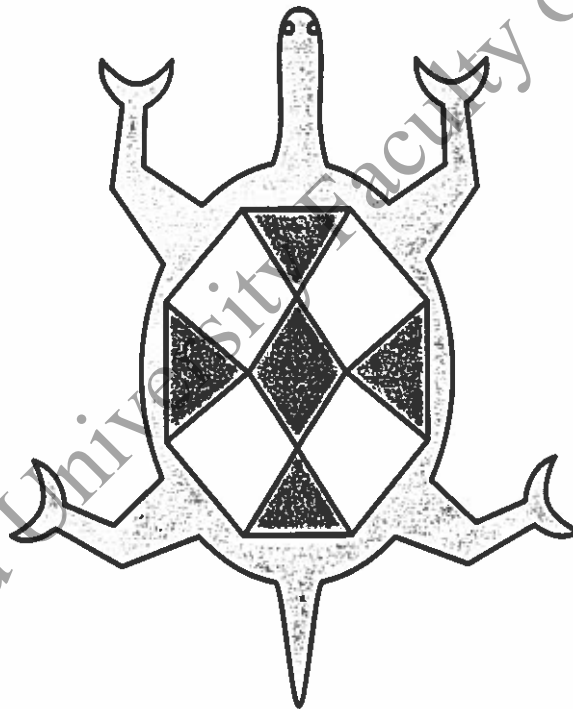
A	B	C	D
E	F	G	H
I	J	K	L
M	N	O	P
Q	R	S	T
U	V	W	X

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 2

Exercise E

In this exercise, you will learn a question, **Aaniin minik** "How much/many?" and you will answer by naming a number from one to twenty-four (1 to 24).

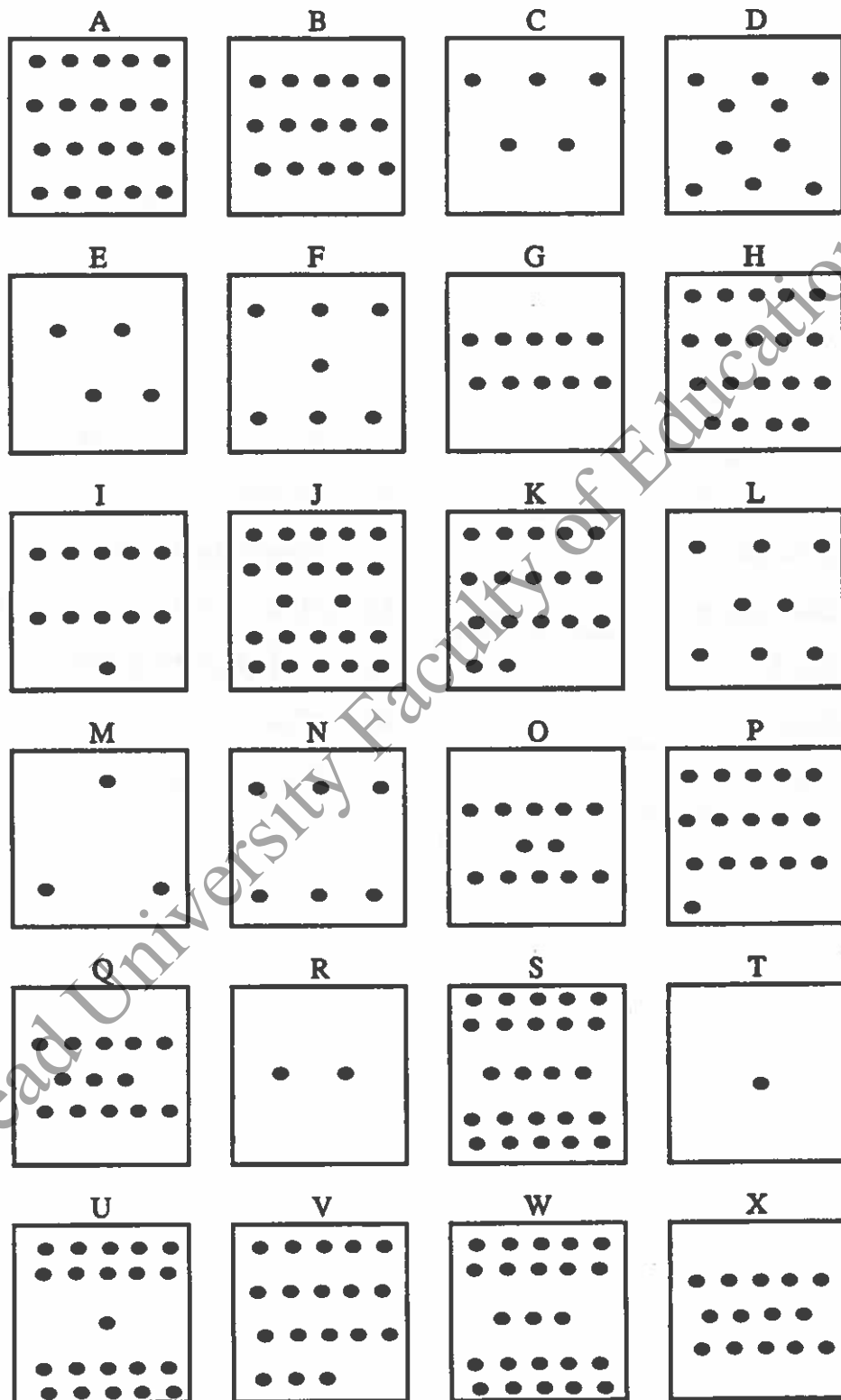
1. On the next page are boxes labelled A to X.
2. The instructor will tell you which box you are to look at. Then he will ask you a question "How many?" You are to answer by saying out loud the number of dots that you see in each box.
3. The instructor will give you the answer so that you can check to see if you are correct.
4. When you have completed the exercise, practice more until you can easily state the number of dots you see in each box.



Miskwaadesi

(turtle)

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 2



INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 2

Exercise F

Reading exercise for number recognition.
Do the exercise as shown in example A.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| A) Ningodwaaswi = 6 | M) Niishtana = |
| B) Zhaangaswi = | N) Midaaso ashi bezhig = |
| C) Midaaso ashi niizhin = | O) Midaaso ashi nishwaaswi = |
| D) Niizhwaaswi = | P) Midaaso ashi zhaangaswi = |
| E) Naanan = | Q) Midaaso ashi naanan = |
| F) Niizhin = | R) Niishtana ashi bezhig = |
| G) Midaaso ashi niizhin = | S) Midaaso ashi ningodwaaswi = |
| H) Nishwaaswi = | T) Niishtana ashi niizhin = |
| I) Midaaso ashi niswi = | U) Midaaso ashi niizhwaaswi = |
| J) Bezhig = | V) Niishtana ashi niizhin = |
| K) Midaaso = | W) Niswi = |
| L) Niiwin = | X) Niishtana ashi niswi = |

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 2

Exercise G

In this exercise, fill in the missing letters for each of the following words. The numbers are in order.

__ i d __ a __ o __ s __ __ sw __

N __ __ __ a as __ b __ z __ g

Ni __ i

M __ aa __ a ii n __ w __ n

B __ h __ g

N __ n __

M __ d __ s __ sh __ n __ sh __ as __

N __ g __ dw __ s __

M __ a __ o __ sh __ n __ g __ d __ a __ wi

N __ zh __ n

N __ z __ a __ s __

N __ sh __ __ sw __

__ id __ aso a __ __ n __ z __ w __ a __ i

Z __ __ ng __ w __

M __ a __ sw __

N __ zh __

M __ d __ so __ sh __ b __ zh __ g

__ id __ o a __ i n __ zh __ n

__ d __ a __ o __ s __ aa __ a __

N __ sh __ a a i ii i

M __ o a h __ z __ ng __ s __ i

N __ shta __

__ i __ t __ na __ as __ __ wi

Ni __ sh __ __ as __ i __ ana __



Aamoo

(bee)

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 2

Exercise H

Using Numbers in Verb Forms:

In this lesson, you have learned to count from 1 to 24. Often, numbers are in verb form, as in:

Q. Aaniin endasiwaad?
How many (animate)?

A. Bezhigo waabooz.
There is one rabbit, the rabbit is alone.

Q. Aaniin endasingin?
How many (inanimate)?

A. Bezhigwan waawan.
There is one egg, the egg is alone.

Notice that in order to use “verbs” of number, you must know whether what you are describing is animate or inanimate. Listen carefully as your instructor says these sentences. Check with your instructor to make sure you understand what they mean. English translation on page 70.

Bezhigo waabooz.

Bezhigwan waawan.

Niizhiwag binewag.

Niizhinoon onaaganan.

Nisiwag giigooyag.

Nisinoon mookomaanan.

Niiwiwag emikwaanensag.

Niiwinoon badaka'iganan.

Naananiwag okaadaakwag.

Naananinoon waawanoon.

Ningodwaasiwag bakwezhiganikaanag.

Ningodwaasinoon minikwaajiganan.

Niizhwaasiwag akikwag.

Niizhwaasinoon bimiden.

Nishwaasiwag zhiishiibag.

Nishwaasinoon wiyaasan.

Zhaangasiwag nitiwakikwag.

Zhaangasinoon doodooshaaboon.

Midaasiwag binewag.

Midaasinoon abwewinan.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 2

Exercise I

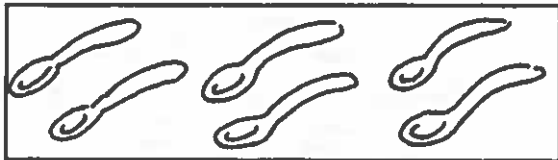
Read and answer each question correctly using the appropriate number verb. The first one has been done for you.

1. Aaniin endasiwaad?

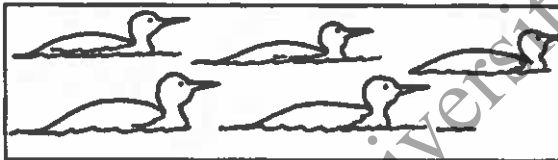


Nisiwag akikwag

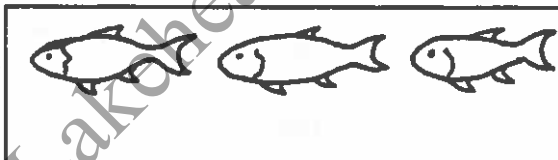
2. Aaniin endasiwaad?



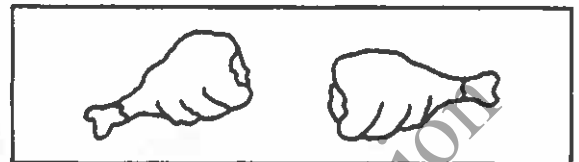
3. Aaniin endasiwaad?



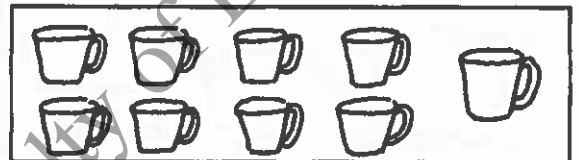
4. Aaniin endasiwaad?



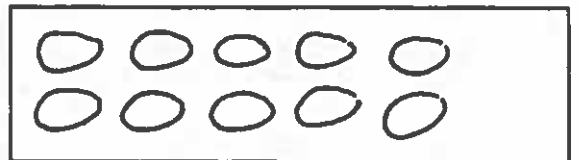
5. Aaniin endasingin?



6. Aaniin endasingin?



7. Aaniin endasingin?



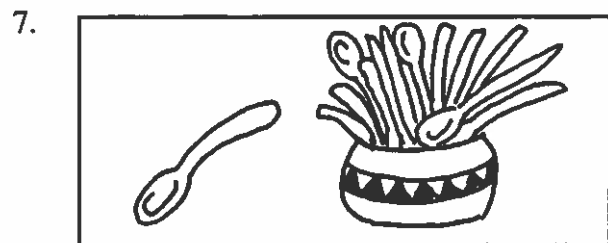
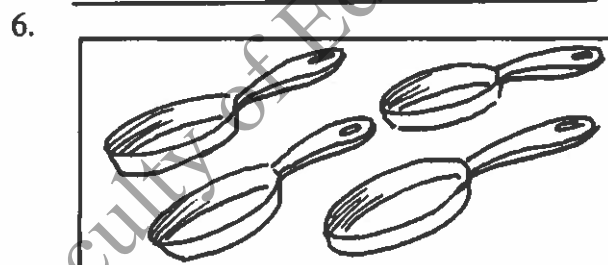
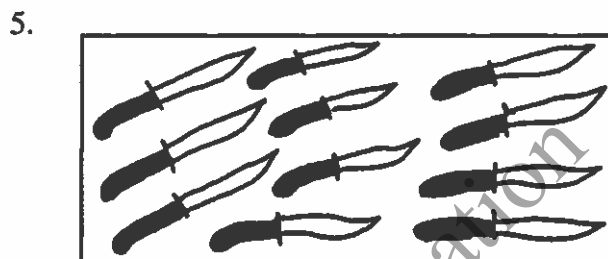
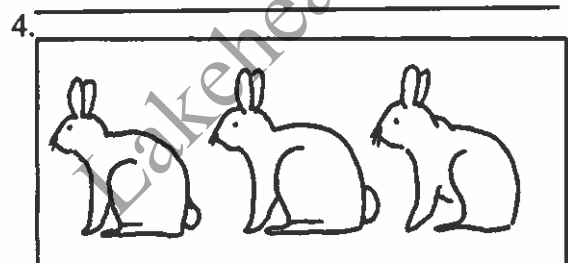
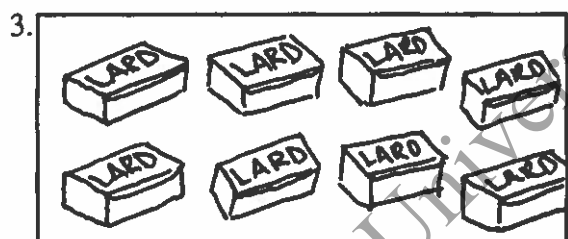
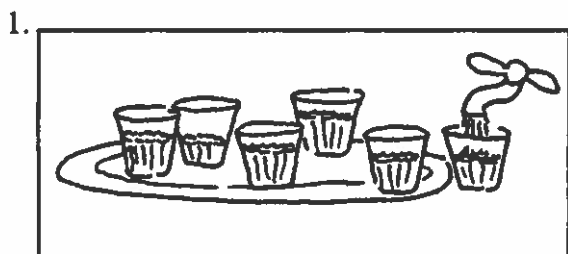
8. Aan endasingin?



INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 2

Exercise J

In Ojibwe, for each picture, write the appropriate form of the question “how many” in Severn dialect and answer with the correct “number verb” form.



INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 2

Exercise K

The following two columns give the Animate and Inanimate number verbs for numbers eleven through twenty-four.

Animate Verb Form

Midaaso ashi bezhig dasiwag.
Midaaso ashi niizhing dasiwag.
Midaaso ashi niswi dasiwag.
Midaaso ashi niiwin dasiwag.
Midaaso ashi naanan dasiwag.
Midaaso ashi ningodwaaso dasiwag.
Midaaso ashi niizhwaaso dasiwag.
Midaaso ashi nishwaaso dasiwag.
Midaaso ashi zhaangaso dasiwag.
Niishtana dasiwag.
Niishtana ashi bezhig dasiwag.
Niishtana ashi niizhin dasiwag.
Niishtana ashi niswi dasiwag.
Niishtana ashi niiwin dasiwag.

Inanimate Verb Form

Midaaso ashi bezhig dasinoon.
Midaaso ashi niizhin dasinoon.
Midaaso ashi niswi dasinoon.
Midaaso ashi niiwin dasinoon.
Midaaso ashi naanan dasinoon.
Midaaso ashi ningodwaaso dasinoon.
Midaaso shi niizhwaaso dasinoon.
Midaaso ashi nishwaaso dasinoon.
Niishtana ashi zhangaso dasinoon.
Nishtana dasinoon.
Niishtana ashi bezhig dasinoon.
Niishtana ashi niizhin dasinoon.
Niishtana ashi niswi dasinoon.
Niishtana ashi niiwin dasinoon.

Here are the plural forms of twenty-four nouns. Some are animate and some are inanimate.

minikwaajiganan	mookomaanan	zhiiwitaaganan	giigoonyag
emikwaanensag	akikwag	bakwezhiganikaanag	abwewinan
wiiaasan	okaadaakwag	onaaganan	zhiishiibag
waawanoon	wiisagadan	opiniin	napenyag
binewag	doodooshaaboon	nitiwakikoog	bimiden
badaka'iganan	waaboozoog	nibiin	

Using nouns of your choice from the above list, give the appropriate question that means "How many _____ are there?" in the first column. Then in the second column, give the answer that uses the appropriate form of the number verb. The first two have been done for you.

1. Aaniin endasingiin minikwaajiganan?

2. Aan endasiwaad emikwaanensag?

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

6. _____

7. _____

8. _____

9. _____

10. _____

11. _____

12. _____

13. _____

14. _____

15. _____

Midaaso ashi bezhig dasinoon minikwaajiganan.

Niishtana dasiwag emikwaanensag.

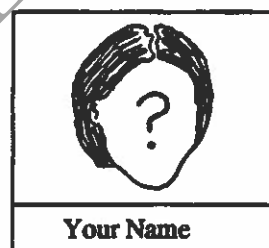
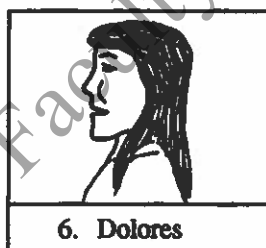
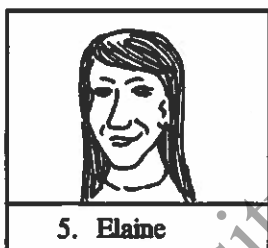
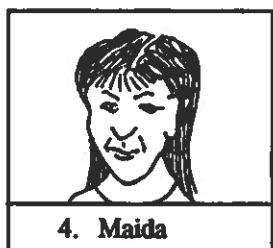
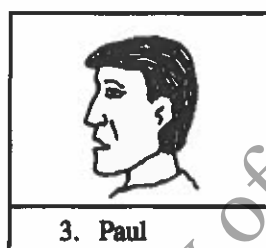
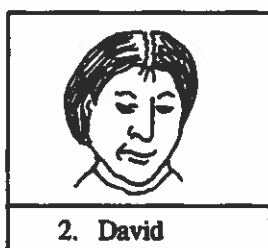
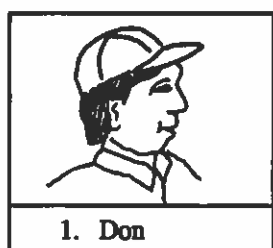
INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 3

Exercise A

May I Introduce Myself?

Before you begin listening to the instructor, read these instructions:

- 1) When you listen to the instructor, you will hear in Anishinaabemowin:
 - the number of the picture you are to look at.
 - the instructor will ask, "Aaniin ezhinikaazoyan?" ("What is your name?")
 - an answer, "____ (N)indizhinikaaz." ("My name is (shown in the picture).")
- 2) Follow the pictures 1 to 7 below as the names shown are used in the answer. Listen carefully as the instructor repeats each question and answer 2 times.



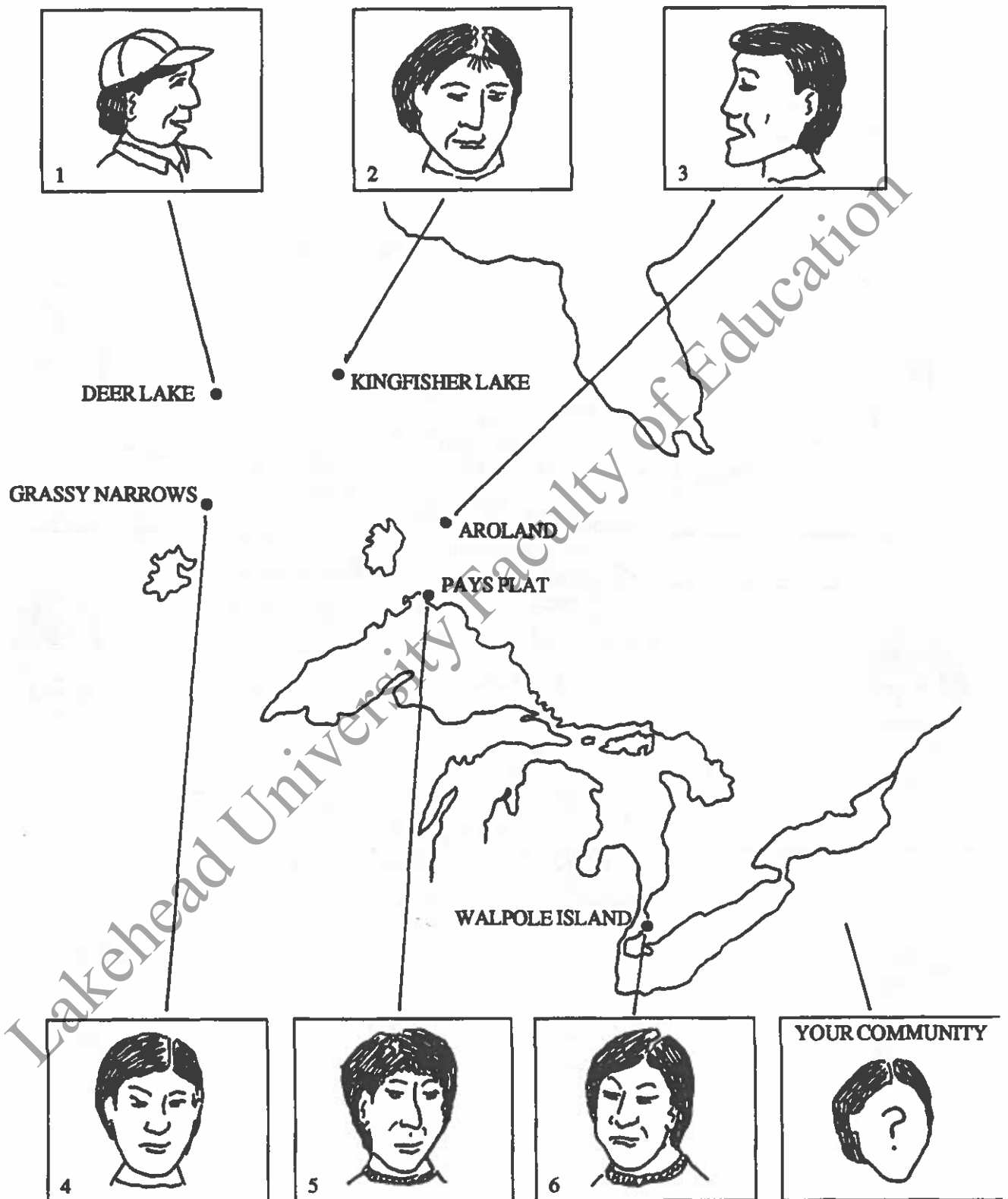
Exercise B

Before you begin listening to the instructor, read these instructions.

- 1) Look at the illustrations on the opposite page. Notice that there are six pictures around the map. Each box has an arrow pointing to a community on the map from which each person illustrated comes from.
- 2) When you listen to the instructor, you will hear in Anishinaabemowin:
 - the number of the picture you are to look at.
 - the question, "Aandi wenjiian?" ("Where are you from?")
 - the answer, "(N)indoonjii." ("I am from (the community shown on the map).")
- 3) Look at each picture and listen to the instructor ask the question. Follow the arrow pointing to the community on the map. Then you will hear the answer to the question, naming the community shown.
- 4) Keep practicing until you feel comfortable with the questions and answers.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect)- UNIT 1; LESSON 3

Exercise B



INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 3

Exercise C

In this exercise, you are talking to each of the following people. Write their answers in the spaces below their names.

Locations on the map:

- SACHIGO LAKE
- MUSKRAT DAM
- WEAGOMOW
- NORTH SPIRIT LAKE
- MACDOWELL LAKE
- RED LAKE
- LAC SEUL
- DRYDEN
- THUNDER BAY
- BEARSKIN LAKE
- BIG TROUT LAKE
- KINGFISHER
- WUNNUNIN LAKE
- CAT LAKE
- NEW SLATE FALLS
- ALLAN WATER
- STOUX LOOKOUT
- GULL BAY
- WAPEKEKA
- KASIBONIKA
- LONG DOG L.
- WEBEQUE
- SUMMER BEAVER
- LANSDOWNE
- PICKLE LAKE
- ARMSTRONG
- FERLAND
- COLLINS
- AUDEN
- GERALDTON
- NIPIGON
- FORT SEVERN

People and their connections:

- DON** (connected to Thunder Bay)
- DAVID** (connected to Thunder Bay)
- ELAINE** (connected to Thunder Bay)
- PAUL** (connected to Fort Severn)
- MAIDA** (connected to Thunder Bay)
- DOLORES** (connected to Thunder Bay)

Blank lines for answers:

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect)- UNIT 1; LESSON 3

Exercise D

Give each of the following people a name and a place that they come from. Then working with a partner, ask and answer questions about them.



FORT SEVERN



SACHIGO LAKE BEARSKIN LAKE
MUSKRAT DAM BIG TROUT LAKE WAPEKEKA
KINGFISHER KASIBONIKA
WEAGOMOW LONG DOG L.
WUNNUNIN LAKE WEBEQUIE
NORTH SPIRIT LAKE SUMMER BEAVER
MACDOWELL LAKE LANSDOWNE
CAT LAKE



RED LAKE PICKLE LAKE
NEW SLATE FALLS
LAC SEUL
ALLAN WATER ARMSTRONG
SIOUX LOOKOUT FERLAND
COLLINS
AUDEN
DRYDEN GULL BAY
GERALDTON



THUNDER BAY

NIPIGON

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 3

Exercise E

SOME USEFUL PHRASES

1. Eya	Yes
Gaawiin	No
Miigwech	Thank you
Aaniin ezhinikaazoyan?	What is your name?
(N)indizhinikaaz	My name is _____.
Aandi wenjiiyan?	Where are you from?
(N)indoonjii.	I am from _____.
Geniin	Me too.
Giin dash (wiin)?	How about you?
Miinawaa ikidon!	Say it again.
Bekaa ikidon!!	Say it slowly.
Ginisidotaan ina?	Do you understand?
Eya, ninisidotaan.	Yes, I understand.
Gaawiin ninisidotanziin.	I do not understand.
Wegonen awe? ¹	What is that (inanimate)?
Awenen awe?	Who is/what is that (animate)?
Aaniin ezhinikaazod?	What is his/her name?
_____ izhinikaazo.	His/her name is _____.

2. Fill in the missing words using the words above. Write English translations in this column. Check your translations from the above list.

1. Mary _____.

2. Aaniin _____.

3. Thunder Bay _____.

4. _____ wenjiiyan?

5. Miinawaa _____.

6. _____ ikidon!

7. Giin _____ wiin?

8. _____ ina?

9. Eya, _____.

10. Gaawiin _____.

11. _____ awe?

12. Awenen _____.

13. Aaniin _____.

14. Tanya _____.

¹ An alternative way of saying 'what is that?' is **Wegonen dinokaan awe?** The word **dinokaan** is often pronounced **nikaan** or **dnikaan**.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect)- UNIT 1; LESSON 3

3. For each of the following words, fill in the missing letters.

__n__zh__k__z.

Aa__ __hi__k__z__n?

Aa__i__w__iy__?

__i__d__nj__K__n.

G__n d__w__?

M__n w__i__on!

__ek__i__id__!

G__n__d__t__n__a?

__y__n__n__id__t__n.

G__n__n__si__o__aa__n.

A__n__h__n__k__?

Aa__e__in__k__o__?

__zh__k__z__.

Exercise F

Complete these exercises:

(a) Write these in English:

- | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Naansii (n)indizhinikaaz. | 7. Biizh okaadaak! |
| 2. Biizh zhiishiib. | 8. Geniin. |
| 3. Miinawaa ikidon! | 9. Giin dash wiin? |
| 4. Biidoon wiyaas! | 10. Webique (n)indoonjii. |
| 5. Aandi wenjiyan? | 11. Ginisidotaan ina? |
| 6. Biidoon onaagan! | 12. Miigwech. |

(b) Write these in Ojibwe:

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. I don't understand. | 7. What is that (animate)? |
| 2. Bring the salt! | 8. Bring the teakettle! |
| 3. Bring the fork! | 9. I am from Thunder Bay. |
| 4. Bring the partridge! | 10. Say it slowly! |
| 5. What is your name? | 11. My name is Nancy. |
| 6. How about you? | 12. Bring the bread! |

(c) Ask and answer these questions in Ojibwe:

1. Do you understand?
2. What is his/her name?
3. Where are you from?
4. My name is _____. How about you?
5. I am from _____. How about you?
6. What is your name?

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

Exercise A

Introduction to Imperatives

Imperatives are those words we use when we want to “tell” someone what to do. They are, in fact, commands. Now you will learn ten imperatives in the following lesson.

In this exercise, you will be introduced to sentences for making commands or imperatives.

- 1) On the opposite page are pictures of ten imperative sentences.
- 2) When you listen to the instructor, you will hear the number of the picture you are to look at, and an imperative statement. They are presented in this order. For your convenience, each word is written twice, the first time in ‘regular’ writing, and the second time with the word broken into syllables. English translations are on page 71.

1. Biindigen!	Biin di gen
2. Namadabin!	Na ma da bin
3. Niibawin!	Nii ba win
4. Biizhaan!	Bii zhaan
5. Maajaan!	Maa jaan
6. Boodawen!	Boo da wen
7. Giiwen!	Gii wen
8. Nagamon!	Na ga mon
9. Nibaan!	Ni baan
10. Wanishkaan!	Wa ni shkaan

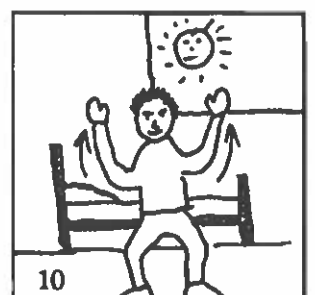
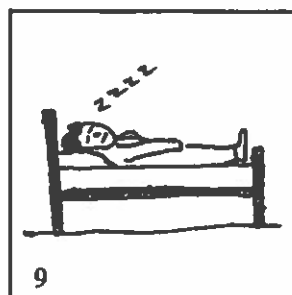
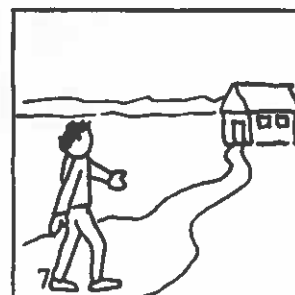
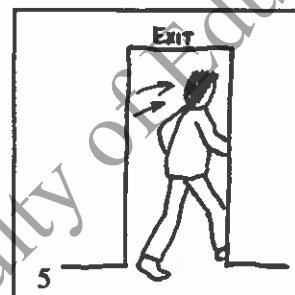
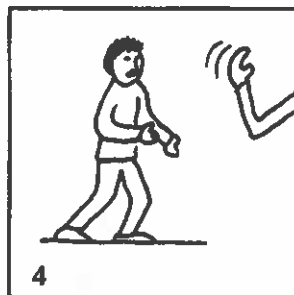
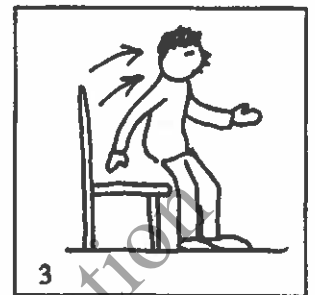
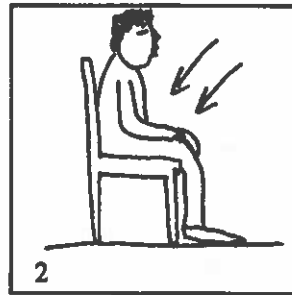
You are to clearly understand what imperative statement each picture represents.

Once you are certain that you know which statement each picture represents, you must think of these sentences in Anishinaabemowin only.

- 3) Look at each picture and listen as an instructor repeats each imperative statement. Keep practicing on your own until you are sure you can easily recognize and use these ten imperatives.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

Exercise A

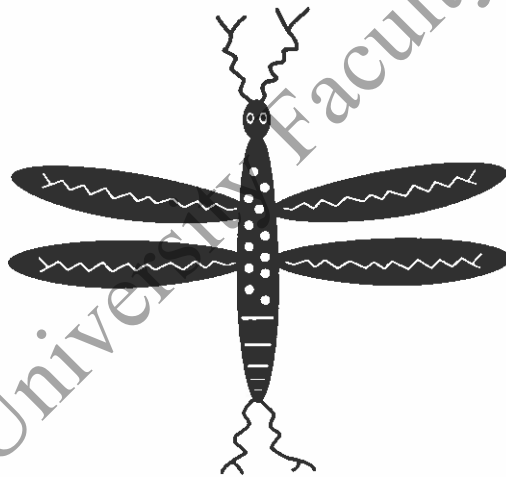


INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

Exercise B

In this exercise, you will practice recognizing imperatives.

- 1) On the opposite page are six rows labelled A to F. In each row are four pictures representing the imperatives you are studying. In the upper left hand corner of each picture is a small box.
- 2) When you listen to the instructor, he will tell you which row you are to look at. Then you will hear in Western Ojibwe an imperative expression. In each row you may hear more than one imperative.
- 3) Place a check mark or a number in the box matching the imperative you hear. As an example, the first row has been done for you. Pay particular attention to the pronunciation as you are going along doing the exercise.

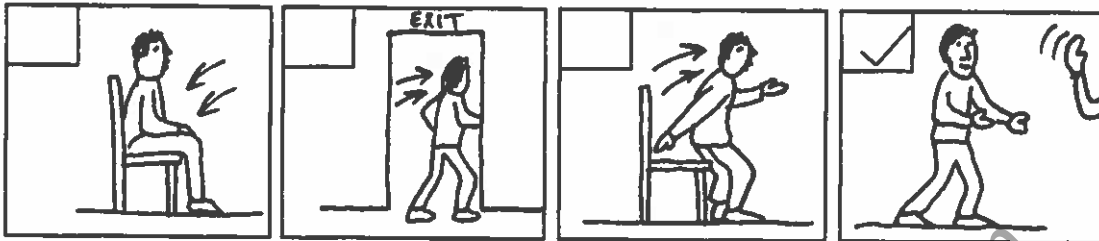


Jiiweganaabizhiish
(dragonfly)

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

Exercise B

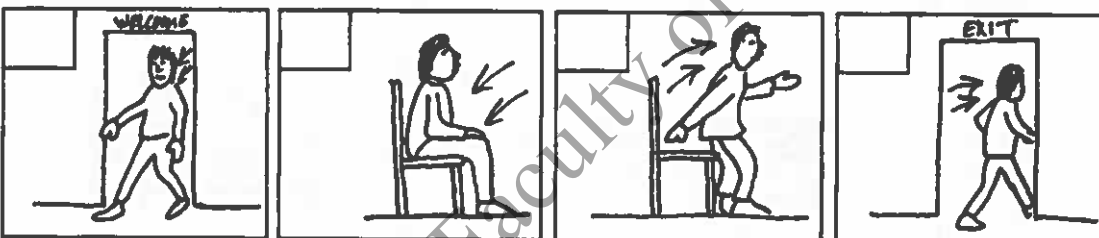
ROW A



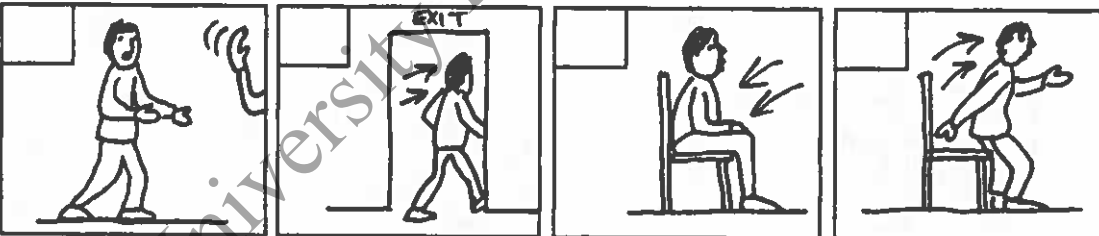
ROW B



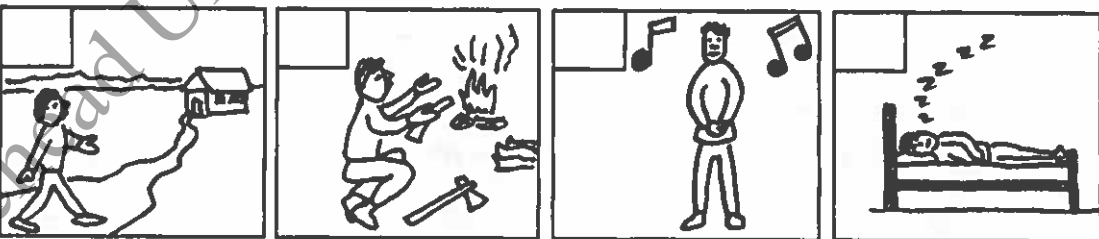
ROW C



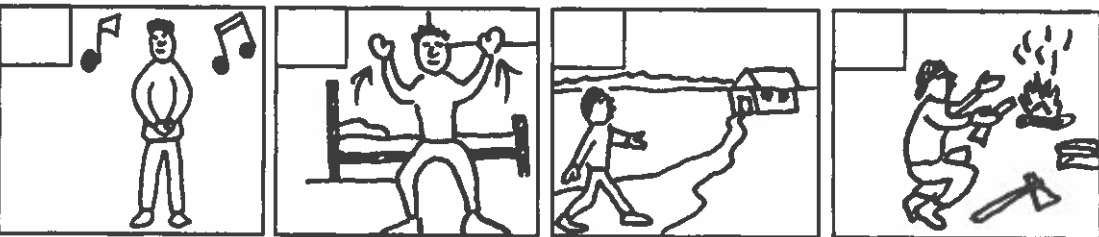
ROW D



ROW E



ROW F



INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

Exercise C

Listening:

- Your instructor will give some commands. Watch for clues as to meaning, and try to respond correctly to each command. Notice that sometimes the instructor is speaking to only one person (singular) and sometimes to two or more people at once (plural). Here are the imperatives you'll be asked to do (in any order).

Niibawin
Niibawiyog

Maajaan
Maajaayog

Giiwen
Giiweyog

Nibaan
Nibaayog

Biindigen
Biindigeyog

Boodawen
Boodaweyog

Nagamon
Nagamoyog

Biizhaan
Biizhaayog

Namadabin
Namadabiyog

Wanishkaan
Wanishkaayog

SINGULAR IMPERATIVES

- Write the correct imperative for each of the following:

1.



2.



3.



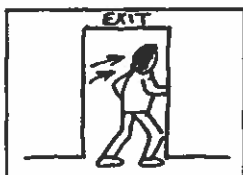
4.



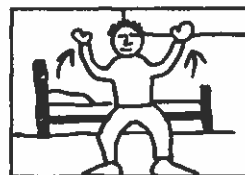
5.



6.



7.



8.



9.



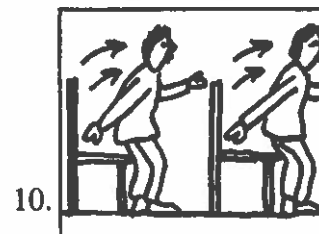
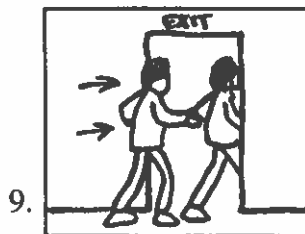
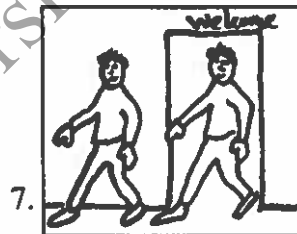
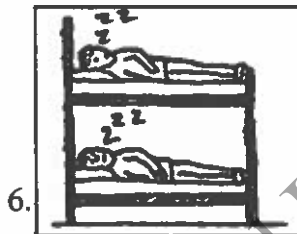
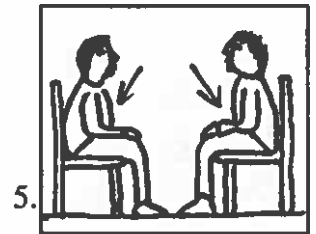
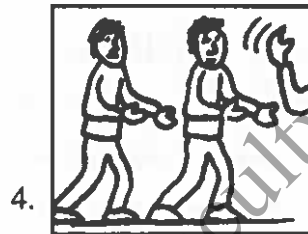
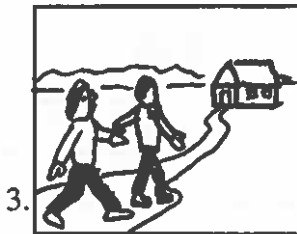
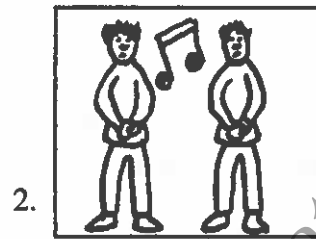
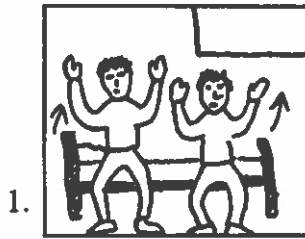
10.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

Exercise D

PLURAL IMPERATIVES

Write the correct plural imperatives for each of the following:



INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

Exercise E

Reading and Writing:

Here are the words you have been using. Try sorting them out for meaning by filling in the chart below. Your instructor will help you check your answers. For the plural imperatives, notice that the ending is **yog**. These endings are listed.

Niibawin
Niibawiyog

Boodawen
Boodaweyog

Maajaan
Maajaayog

Nagamon
Nagamoyog

Giiwen
Giiweyog

Biizhaan
Biizhaayog

Nibaan
Nibaayog

Namadabin
Namadabiyog

Biindigen
Biindigeyog

Wanishkaan
Wanishkaayog

	Singular	Plural
Come in!		
Stand up!		
Go away!		
Go home!		
Go to sleep!		
Sit down!		
Come here!		
Make (build) a fire		
Sing!		
Get up!		

Speaking:

When you think you've heard and understood the commands well, try telling someone (or several people) to do some of these things. If you do it successfully, you should have all the people making the appropriate responses.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

Exercise F

Fill in the missing letters to complete the words.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. B__nd_g_n | 2. N__b_w_n | 3. __iizh__n | 4. B__d_w_y_g |
| 5. N__d_b_y__ | 6. __iiv__g | 7. __ii_a_iy__ | 8. __aa_aa__ |
| 9. __ii_aw__o__ | 10. __nish_aa__ | 11. __oo_a_e | 12. __a_ad__iy__ |
| 13. __m_d__n | 14. N_g_m_n | 15. Wan__k__o__ | 16. __ii__aa_o__ |
| 17. __a_a_o__g | 18. __ii__a_ey__ | 19. G__w__n | 20. M__j__g |

Exercise G

In this exercise, fill in the chart below by using the words from the previous page exercise E.

English	Singular Imperative	Plural Imperative

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

Exercise H-1

Word Search:

1. The words listed in 1-30 below can be found in the puzzle. Look for these and circle each one as you find it.

D I G O G I I N D A S H W I I N B I N A Z E G I
B A W E N E S H N I K A A N G E E M I Z A Y A B
D I B S N A B O O B I N A T I N G A N H B A Y N
M I N I I G A S O E Z O B O N E I N D I A ' Y I
I N K E I N A A B Z H O O D E W S O O I B N A G
I N I N N Z S H A H E M O D O D A N O S O I N N
G I I G O O H A B I Y E Z H I N I I N H S N I I
E G D I W I I S A G A D A G A A N M J I A I S S
N O O M B A D A K A ' I G A N N N I I I A S H A
I I D O O D O O S H A A B O O A A B I B D I H D
I W I D G E T G A A B O B N M A N D I N I D N N
N A A W I D E D A N I M O A G H O O D W M O O E
A A N I I N E Z H I N I K A A Z O D A A N T O N
A N I G E N H N A G A M O N N I N I P A A A B I
B S P W M A N I B A D A M A N I B N I W A A W I
B I I S A B O N A T A A Z N I B A A N A B N A N
B I N M I D A A S O S H I N I I Z H I N I I B A
G A A W I I N K E N O S M I N Z H A B A K W A A

2. For each of the following give the English translation.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. giin dash wiin? = _____ | 16. zhiishiib = _____ |
| 2. biizh = _____ | 17. eya, ninisidotaan = _____ |
| 3. nibaan = _____ | 18. awenesh nikaan? = _____ |
| 4. aaniin endasingin? = _____ | 19. midaaso = _____ |
| 5. niiwin = _____ | 20. waabooz = _____ |
| 6. bezhig = _____ | 21. eya = _____ |
| 7. gaawin = _____ | 22. niswi = _____ |
| 8. giigoo = _____ | 23. giiwen = _____ |
| 9. geniin = _____ | 24. nagamon = _____ |
| 10. doodooshaaboo = _____ | 25. wiisagad = _____ |
| 11. biizhaan = _____ | 26. aaniin ezhinikaazod? = _____ |
| 12. (n)indoonjii = _____ | 27. midaaso ashi niizhin = _____ |
| 13. bimide = _____ | 28. zhiiwitaagan? = _____ |
| 14. naanan = _____ | 29. waawan = _____ |
| 15. namadabin = _____ | 30. bine = _____ |

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

Exercise H-2

Word Search:

There are thirty Ojibwe words or phrases in the puzzle. As you find each one, circle the letters. Then write the Ojibwe word or phrase in the appropriate space in 1-30 below.

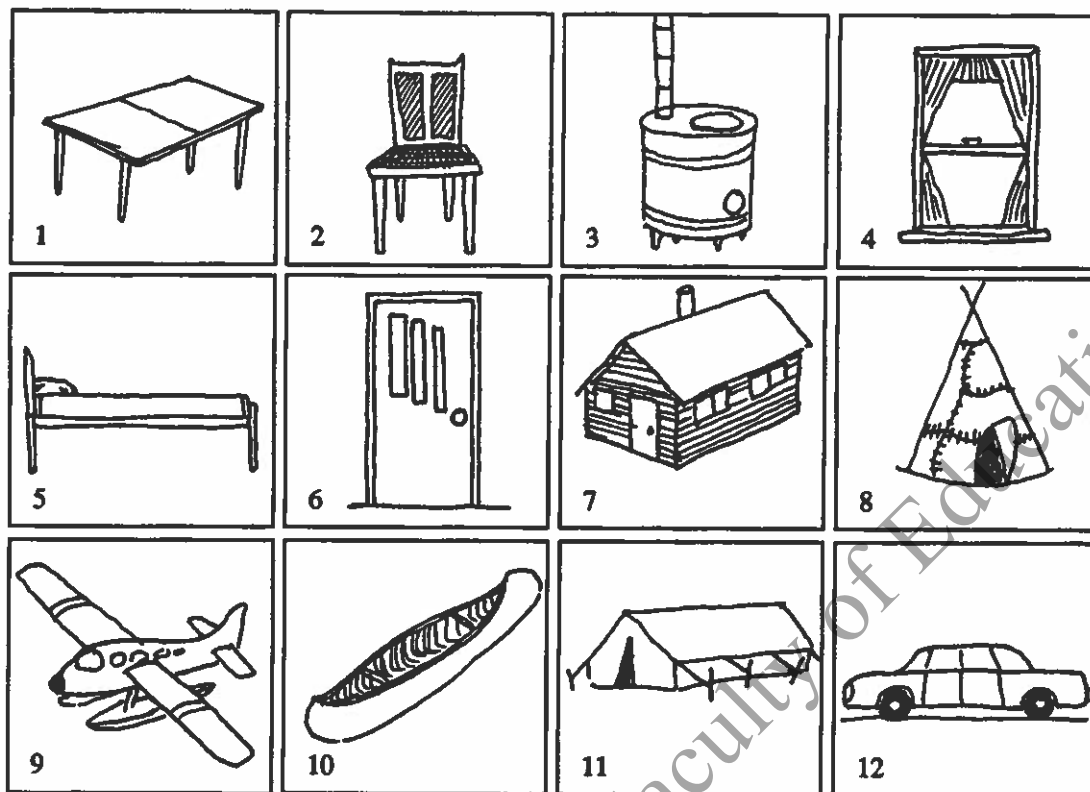
B E K A A I K I D O N A H I J K O G E ' A A O B
I Z N N A A K H S I N A W I A N I I K A A W N I
S H I I W I T A A G A N A N K O I N A N N A I I
B A W I T I O S A A B I E P A N M I A P N A I N
N A A B I N N A I S H I A A N A I S D I B A N D
B N B S I I W H A H A N S H I G I I A I I W E I
O G I I N I A A K E N E N A S I S D A W I A G G
D A I N I P A W E N E N A W E H A O K S W N A E
N S N N K A N K B A N D A A N Z G T O A S N A N
I W A N A A H N O K ' A Y E I E O A H A A I B A
B I N I I Z H I N E N S E A B W I A A W A H M D
I I N I I S H T A N A I B N I K I N O D W Z A I
O M N I P O N I T E N W A A I A I N O H O A N
G I B I I S K I T A N A K G N B N N A G Z D J E
M I I G W E C H S A N A B A A N A A N N I I A N
C H I I W I I Y A A S D A A G O Y E W I I G A O
B I N I S H W A A S W I A N A B A D I N N I N O
N I B A S H K I N I N A G O Y E W A D O O B I B

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1. Bring it (animate) = _____ | 16. Yes = _____ |
| 2. plate = _____ | 17. Salt = _____ |
| 3. No = _____ | 18. Thank you = _____ |
| 4. Water = _____ | 19. Carrot = _____ |
| 5. Me too = _____ | 20. Say it slowly = _____ |
| 6. Bannock = _____ | 21. Partridge = _____ |
| 7. Meat = _____ | 22. Come in! = _____ |
| 8. Bread = _____ | 23. How many (animate)? = _____ |
| 9. An egg = _____ | 24. Do you understand? = _____ |
| 10. Twenty = _____ | 25. Go home(plu.)! = _____ |
| 11. Nine = _____ | 26. Stand up! = _____ |
| 12. Two = _____ | 27. Wake/get up! = _____ |
| 13. Six = _____ | 28. Who/what's that (animate)? = _____ |
| 14. Eight = _____ | 29. Go/go away! = _____ |
| 15. Seven = _____ | 30. Build a fire (plural)! = _____ |

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

Exercise I - 1

Introduction to Nouns:



1. Listen as your instructor pronounces the names of the things pictured above. After you have heard each word several times, try to match the pictures to the words written below: English translations are on page 71.

gizhaabikizigan	# _____
ombaasin ¹	# _____
ishkwaandem	# _____
jiimaan	# _____
apabiwin	# _____
waakaa'igan	# _____
waasechigan	# _____
odaabaanens	# _____
adoopowin	# _____
babagiwayaanegamig ²	# _____
nibaagan	# _____
wiigiwaam ³	# _____

¹ The word **ombaasin** is often pronounced 'ambwaasin.' Some speakers may also use other words such as **gaa-ombaasing** or **bimisewin**.

^{2,3} The word **babagiwayaanegamig** is used for 'canvas tent'; **wiigiwaam** is a word for 'tent' in general.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

2. Fill in the missing letters to complete the words. The numbers are in order from section 3 below. Check your own spelling.

1. a _ _ _ p _ _ _ n
2. _ _ ab _ _ _ n
3. g _ _ _ aa _ _ _ z _ _ _ n
4. w _ _ s _ _ h _ _ a _
5. n _ _ ew _ n
6. i _ _ _ wa _ _ _ e _
7. w _ _ k _ _ _ g _ _
8. b _ j _ _ _ h _ _ _ o _ _ _ n
9. o _ _ aa _ _ n
10. j _ _ m _ _ _
11. b _ _ a _ i _ wa _ _ _ ne _ _ _ g
12. o _ _ _ b _ _ n

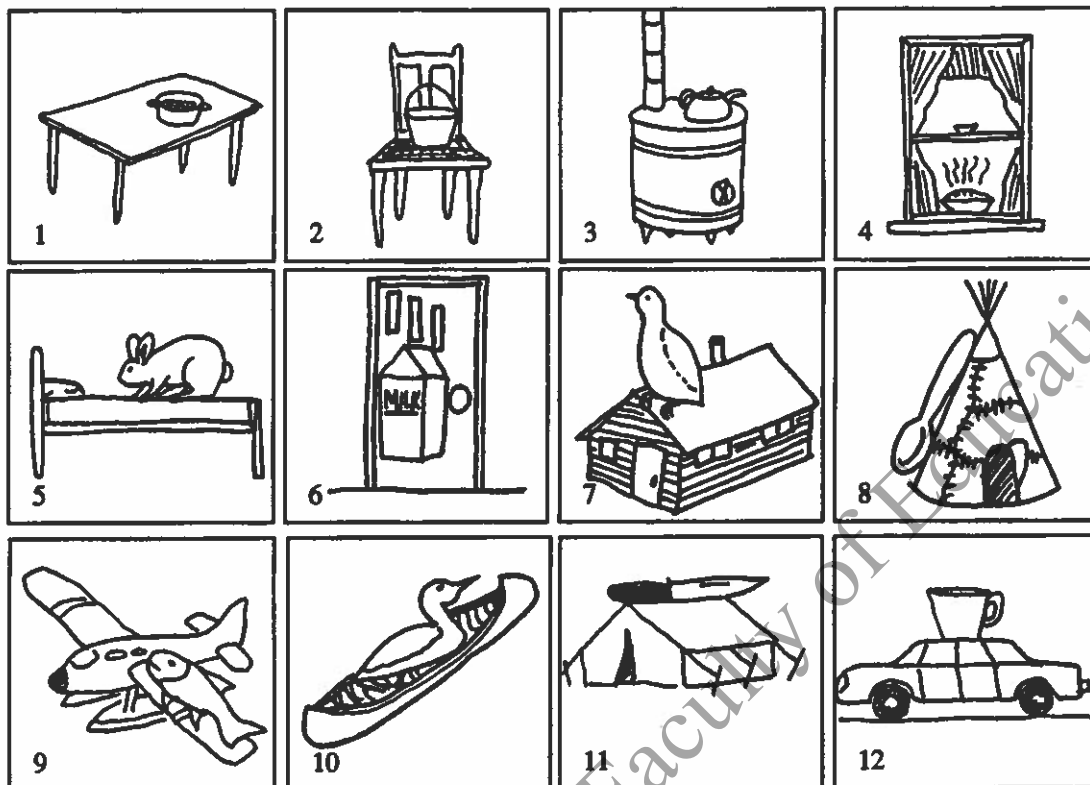
3. Listen carefully as your instructor repeats these words. Notice the words are broken down into syllables. This will help you to concentrate on pronunciation.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. a doo po win | 7. waa kaa 'i gan |
| 2. a pa bi win | 8. ba jiish ka 'o gaan |
| 3. gi zhaa bi ki zi gan | 9. om baa sin |
| 4. waa se chi gan | 10. jii maan |
| 5. ni baa gan | 11. ba ba gi wa yaa ne ga mig |
| 6. ish kwaan dem | 12. o daa baan |

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

Exercise I - 2

Introduction to Locatives



Now, watch and listen as your instructor repeats the names of the items you have just learned. Pay special attention to the new ending on each word. The English translation are on page 71.

LOCATIVE means the form that tells you where something is located.

gizhaabikiziganing

ishkwaandeming

apabiwining

waasechiganing

adoopowining

nibaaganing

ombaasining

jiimaaning

waakaa'iganing

odaabaaning

babagiwayaanegamigong

wiigiwaaming

Remember, locative endings can mean "in," "at" or "on." Repeat the pronunciation as many times as you want. When you think you understand the names of the items with the locative endings, learn the word for "where." It should look like this: "Aandi."

Now that you know these locative forms, in this exercise, work in pairs. Your partner will now ask you questions such as: "Aandi minikwaajigan?" or "Aandi mookomaan?" by referring to the following pictures. By taking turns asking and answering questions, complete this exercise until you have mastered these questions and answers.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

Exercise J

How can you make a noun locative?

- (a) Usually, just add /-ing/ to the simple noun.
- (b) However, if the simple noun ends with a /-g/, add /-ong/ instead.
- (c) And, if the simple noun ends in a vowel, just add /-ng/.

A few nouns don't follow these rules, but they will be pointed out to you as we come to them.

Using what you have learned:

To continue practicing with locative forms, look back to the 24 pictures on page 1 of your text. For exercise writing, list those 24 articles with locative forms and underline the locative endings.

Continue reading and writing practice:

If you want to be more specific about a location, it is helpful to use one of the following words with the locative form of the noun:

opimeya'ii	along side it	biinjayi'ii	inside it
wagijiya'ii	on top of it	zhiibaaya'ii	under it
anaamiya'ii	under it	beshonjiya'ii	closer to it
awasaya'ii	beyond it	jiigayi'ii	by it

(biindig (indoors) and agwajiing (outdoors) are used without nouns.)

New Vocabulary

ashi!	put him! (animate)
atoon!	put it! (inanimate)
bakite'o!	hit him!
gwayak	well (correctly, thoroughly)
na!	look!
bangii	a little bit
eta	only
bangii eta	only a little bit
(o)sha!	emphatic particle
i'imaa, imaa	there
o'omaa, omaa	here
omwaadi ¹	over here, this way
wedi	there
i'iwedi	that (inanimate) over there
waasa	way over there, far
aaniinpii?	when? (in question only)
apii	when

¹ The word omwaadi is probably a contraction of omaa 'here' and owidi 'over here.'

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

Exercise K

1. Working in pairs with the language. Read until you understand well the following mini-dialogues. Translations of the dialogues may be found on page 71.
 - (a) Na! Wedi!
Aandi?
Iwidi!
Awenen a'a?
Waabooz gaye bine.
Aazha ninisidotaan!
Bine gaye waabooz.
Aazha ninisidotaan.
Miigwech.
 - (b) Biizhaan!
Aandi?
Owedi! Namadabin omwaadi!
Atoon miijim adoopowining.
Aandi zhiiwitaagan gaye wiisagad?
Imaa opimeya'ii onaaganing.
Biizh bakwezhiganikaan gaye bimide.
Gegiin wiisinin!
Ahaaw, miigwech.
2. Using what you have learned, now, write two mini-dialogues of your own by trying to use all the nouns and verbs and particles that you can think of.
3. Continue working in pairs with the language. Share what you have learned and take turns with your partner sharing your own dialogue. Make sure that you both understand!

Note: At this time, your instructor will be concentrating on pronunciation and grammatical structure.

4. Review this lesson with your instructor. Pay particular attention to pronunciation.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 5

Introduction to Intransitive Verbs (VAI)

What is an intransitive verb? An intransitive verb is a word that:

- describes what the activity is.
- describes what the state is.
- describes what the condition is.

In the Native language, all intransitive verbs are complete sentences. For example, "Anokii" means "He/she is working." English translations of the following verbs may be found on page 72.

Exercise A

(1)



The pictures above show persons who are:

- | | | | |
|-------------|-----------------|-------------|---------------|
| (1) nagamo | (2) nishkaadizi | (3) nibaa | (4) wiisini |
| (5) aakozi | (6) giwe | (7) niimi | (8) debisinii |
| (9) boodawe | (10) jiibaakwe | (11) anokii | (12) odamino |

Watch the pictures as you listen to your instructor.

(2) Pronunciation Practice:

As your instructor says these words, listen to how they are broken down into syllables.

- | | | | |
|---------------|--------------------|---------------|------------------|
| (1) na ga mo | (2) nish kaa di zi | (3) ni baa | (4) wii si ni |
| (5) aa ko zi | (6) gi we | (7) nii mi | (8) de bi si nii |
| (9) boo da we | (10) jii baa kwe | (11) a no kii | (12) o da mi no |

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Ojibwe) - UNIT 1; LESSON 5

- (3) Practice speaking with a partner by asking questions and giving answers. First, learn the sentence for "What is he/she doing?" It should look like this: "Aaniin endoodang?" Your partner will now ask you questions such as: "Aaniin endoodang?" the answer would be "Nagamo" or "Anokii" etc. Pay particular attention to good pronunciation on both questions and answers. Repeat taking turns asking questions and answers until you have completely mastered the pronunciation.

Example:

Question: Aaniin endoodang?

Answer: Nagamo

Exercise writing

- (4) Fill in the blank spaces for your answers by using the pictures from the previous page.

Aaniin endoodang?

1. _____
3. _____
5. _____
7. _____
9. _____
11. _____

2. _____
4. _____
6. _____
8. _____
10. _____
12. _____

Exercise B

1. In this exercise, you will continue practice speaking with your partner by asking questions and answers. This time, your partner will ask questions such as, "Is Mary going home?" Translation in the Native language should look like this: "Giiwe na Mary?" For now, the answer should be either "Gaawiin" or "Eya." Continue this exercise until you complete all 12 verbs. Once again, pay particular attention to good pronunciation. Beside each of the questions below, write positive or negative answers. The first one is done for you.

Nagamo na Jane? Eya.

Aakozi na Richard? _____

Boodawe na Aaron? _____

Jiibaakwe na? _____

Anokii na Duane? _____

Odamino na Tony? _____

Debisinii na? _____

Wiisini na Judy? _____

Nibaa na zhiishiib? _____

Nishkaadizi na Ann? _____

Giiwe na Nancy? _____

Niimi na? _____

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 5

Exercise C

Reading and Writing:

- (a) Here is a list of the verbs you have been learning, given in mixed order. See if you can identify them by matching numbers and letters and the numbers which correspond to each picture. Remember, the pictures are at the beginning of this lesson in Exercise A.

(A) wiisini	(E) aakozi	(I) giawe
(B) debisinii	(F) boodawe	(J) anokii
(C) niimi	(G) nibaa	(K) odamino
(D) nishkaadizi	(H) jiibaakwe	(L) nagamo

1. _____	4. _____	7. _____	10. _____
2. _____	5. _____	8. _____	11. _____
3. _____	6. _____	9. _____	12. _____

Answer key:	1 - L	4 - A	7 - C	10 - H
	2 - D	5 - E	8 - B	11 - J
	3 - G	6 - I	9 - F	12 - K

Exercise D

Introduction to Negatives

Listening:

1. Turn back to the beginning of this lesson, and use the twelve verb pictures for reference as you listen to your instructor ask and answer questions like these

Nagamo na Jane? Eya, nagamo Jane.
Nagamo na Jane? Gaawiin nagamosii Jane.

As you listen to the examples your instructor gives, notice how to give a NEGATIVE ("no") answer correctly.

Negative responses always follow the pattern of:

Gaawiin + Verb +sii

As an example:

Gaawiin nagamo+sii Jane.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Ojibwe) - UNIT 1; LESSON 5

Reading and Writing:

2. Answer the following questions in the negative only. The first one has been done for you.

Giiwe na Nancy?

Gaawiin giiwesii Nancy.

Nishkaadizi na?

Nagamo na Kim?

Aakozi na Richard?

Nibaa na zhiishiib?

Niimi na John?

Wiisini na bine?

Boodawe na Scott?

Debisinii na?

Jiibaakwe na?

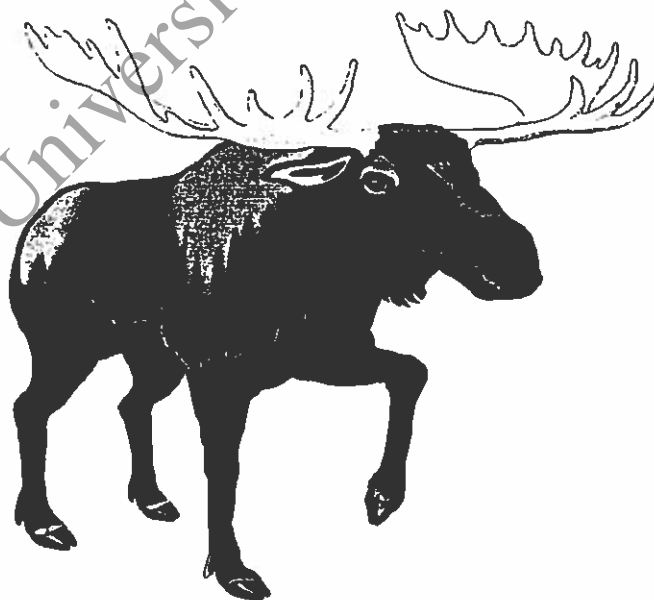
Anokii na Duane?

Odamino na Tony?

Exercise E

Speaking:

When you believe you've got it ... answer the questions the instructor asks using the negative forms of the verbs.



Mooz

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 5

Exercise F

Positive and Negative Responses

Answer the following questions with either a positive or a negative response. Make sure each answer makes sense. Remember, you have to do this exercise on your own.

1. Nagamo na Jane? _____
2. Odamino na Don? _____
3. Boodawe na Paul? _____
4. Nibaa na Sarah? _____
5. Wiisini na bine? _____
6. Debininii na Maida? _____
7. Aakozi na Betty? _____
8. Jiibaakwe na Delores? _____
9. Nishkaadizi na? _____
10. Niimi na Dave? _____
11. Giiwe na Jonathan? _____
12. Debininii na? _____
13. Wiisini na Elaine? _____
14. Odamino na Lisa? _____
15. Nagamo na Sally? _____
16. Anokii na Lena? _____
17. Nibaa na John? _____
18. Boodawe na Paul? _____
19. Aakozi na Susan? _____
20. Niimi na Wendy? _____
21. Giiwe na Paul? _____
22. Jiibaakwe na? _____
23. Anokii na Dave? _____
24. Nishkaadizi na Don? _____

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Ojibwe) - UNIT 1; LESSON 5

Exercise G

Introduction to Person:

Listening Exercise:

Listen to your instructor as he/she says these words in Ojibwe (Severn dialect) and watch him as he identifies what each word means. When you think you've got it, tell which word below is first person, which is second person, and which is third person:

niin giin wiin

- (a) You'll need to know how to express these ideas:

"I" or "Me" _____ called "first" person."

"You" _____ called "second person."

"He/she" or Him/her" _____ called "third person."

- (b) In lesson three, page 28, you learned to say "Giin dash wiin" (often shortened to "Giin dash"). Now listen to your instructor so you'll hear and understand the meaning of:

"Niin dash wiin?" and "Wiin dash wiin?"

Note that these are often shortened to **Niin dash** and **Wiin dash**.

What would these mean? "Linda dash wiin?" and "Jimmy dash wiin?"

- (c) Now listen to these phrases until you understand them easily too. The English translations are on page 72.

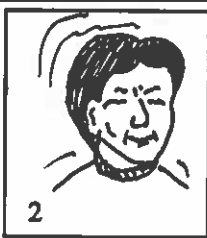
- | | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|--------------|------------------|
| 1. geniin | 5. gaawiin niin | 9. eya niin | 13. niinitam |
| 2. gegiin | 6. gaawiin giin | 10. eya giin | 14. giinitam |
| 3. gewiin | 7. gaawiin wiin | 11. eya wiin | 15. wiinitam |
| 4. gaye James | 8. gaawiin Joan | 12. eya Mary | 16. wiinitam Tim |

- (d) Listen to your instructor and pay particular attention to the pronunciation and to find out the exact meaning of each of the following words on the next page. The English translations are on page 72.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 5



ninagam
ginagam
nagamo



ninishkaadiz
ginishkaadiz
nishkaadizi



ninibaa
ginibaa
nibaa



niwiisin
giwiisin
wiisini



(n)indaakos
gidaakos
aakozi



nigiiwe
gigiiwe
giiwe



niniim
giniim
niimi



(n)indebisinii
gidebisinii
debisinii



niboodawe
giboodawe
boodawe



nijiibaakwe
gijiibaakwe
jiibaakwe



(n)indanokii
gidanokii
anokii



(n)indoodamin
gidoodamin
odamino

Exercise H

- (a) Now you know twelve verbs. Before you continue, practice how to ask and answer questions with them in the first, second, and third person forms. First you have to learn some phrases for asking questions. Here they are:

Aaniin endoodaman?	What are you doing?
Aaniin endoodamaan?	What am I doing?
Aaniin endoodang?	What is he/she doing?

- (b) Working with the language, in pairs, take turns going through all twelve verbs, both asking and answering questions. For example:

Question	Answer
Aaniin endoodaman?	(N)indanokii. (also pronounced (n)indanokwii)
Aaniin endoodamaan?	Gigiiwe.
Aaniin endoodang?	Nibaa.

Before doing some exercise speaking with your partner, look back to the words under the pictures in exercise G (d) of this lesson. They seem to follow a fairly regular pattern. What information do you understand from "ni-" at the beginning of a verb? What information do you understand from "gi-" at the beginning?

Notice the verb listed for pictures 5, 8, 11. Is there anything different about these examples? How do you account for these irregularities? (The added "d" is just slipped in to make the word easier to pronounce, in much the same way we add an "n" in English phrases such as "an apple".)

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Ojibwe) - UNIT 1; LESSON 5

Notice too, that the first and second person forms of the verb sometimes keep the final vowel and sometimes drop it. From your own observation, can you think of any "rule" you could make to predict when the vowel will drop? The third person form of the verb is also the verb STEM.

- (c) Here are some exercises for you to complete using the pictures and phrases from the previous page. The first one has been done for you.

Aaniin endoodaman?

Ninagam.

_____.	_____.	_____.
_____.	_____.	_____.
_____.	_____.	_____.
_____.	_____.	_____.

Aaniin endoodamaan?

Ginagam.

_____.	_____.	_____.
_____.	_____.	_____.
_____.	_____.	_____.
_____.	_____.	_____.

Aaniin endoodang?

Nagamo.

_____.	_____.	_____.
_____.	_____.	_____.
_____.	_____.	_____.
_____.	_____.	_____.

- (d) Continue working in pairs and take turns going through all twelve verbs, both asking and answering questions. This time, questions and answers should look like this:

Question

Gidaakoz ina?

(N)indaakoz ina?

Aakozi na?

Aakozi na Mary?

Answer

Gaawiin (n)indaakozisii.

Gaawiin gidaakozisii.

Gaawiin aakozisii.

Gaawiin aakozisii Mary.

Here are some questions for you to answer in the negative form only.

Ninagam ina?

Ninishkaadiz ina?

Nibaa na Jane?

Niwiisin na?

Gigiiwe na?

Niimi na Paul?

_____.
_____.
_____.
_____.
_____.
_____.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 5

Debisinii na?	_____
Niboodawe na?	_____
Ninishkaadiz ina?	_____
Dave na anokii?	_____
Odamino na Susan?	_____
Gidoodamin ina?	_____

- (e) Continue working in pairs. This time mix asking questions and answers.
For example:

Gigiiwe na? Eya, nigiiwe.
 or Gaawiin ningiiwesii.

Nigiiwe na? Eya, gigiiwe.
 or Gaawiin gigiiwesii.

Giiwe na? Eya, giiwe.
 or Gaawiin giiwesii.

Giiwe na Mary? Eya, giiwe Mary.
 or Gaawiin giiwesii Mary.

SOME USEFUL PHRASES

Miinawaa	Again, and
Gaye	Also, too
Wiiba!	Hurry! quick! soon (not a verb)
Geyaabi	More, still
Aazha	Now, then, yet, already
Debwe	Really ("It's the truth")
Debwe na?	Really? ("Is that true?")
Baabige	Right away
Maagizhaa	Maybe, perhaps

Exercise I

- (a) Read the following mini-dialogues until you fully understand them. Translations are on page 73.

(1) Henry biizhaan!
 Bi-wiisinin!
 Namadabin, wiisinin!
 Biizh giigoo gaye
 opin! Miigwech.
 Geyaabi na opin?
 Gaawiin, aazha (n)indebisinii.

(2) Gidanokii na?
 Eya, giin dash wiin?
 Gaawiin, (n)indaakoz.
 Gigiiwe na baabige?
 Eya nigiiwe wiiba.
 Gaawiin niin. Maagizhaa geyaabi (n)indanokii.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Ojibwe) - UNIT 1; LESSON 5

(b) Now, write one of your own.

(c) Working in pairs, share your dialogue with your partner. Both of you should read it through, making sure that you can understand it all, and that you can pronounce all the words. Check with your instructor if you need help.

(d) Complete these exercises. Translations are on page 73.

(1) Say in English:

Miinawaa ikidon!
Aazha na giawe?
Mary (n)indizhinikaaz.
Geyaabi na giigoo?
Nibaa na Samuel?
Gaawiin nimaajaasii.
Biidoon mookomaan gaye onaagan.

Debwe na?
Biizhaan baabige!
Bi-wiisinin!
Ginishkaadiz ina?
Gidebisinii na?
Eya, miigwech.
Biizh emikwaanens gaye ziinzibaakwad.

(2) Say in Ojibwe:

I'm sick.
Are you sick?
He/she is sick.
Is Sam sick?
You are sick.

Do all five of the sentences in (2) above again, changing the verb to:

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------|
| (3) eating | (8) sleeping |
| (4) angry | (9) dance |
| (5) going home | (10) playing |
| (6) make a fire | (11) cooking |
| (7) full | (12) working |

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 5

(e) Say these pronouns in Ojibwe:

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------|----------------|--------------|
| (1) Not me! | You too! | How about him? | My turn. |
| (2) Not you! | Jane too! | How about me? | Your turn. |
| (3) Not him/her. | Me too! | How about you? | Jack's turn. |

Exercise J

Practice writing these following mini-dialogues. Translations are on page 74.

Write in Ojibwe:

- (1) What is your name?

My name is George.

Where are you from?

I'm from Gull Bay¹.

Really? Gull Bay.

Me too, I'm from Gull Bay.

- (2) Sam is sleeping. Are you sleeping too?

Not me... I'm eating.

Bring the bannock! The Partridge too.

Bring the knife! The fork too.

More bannock?

No, I'm already full. Thank you.

- (3) Is Mary dancing?

No, she's working.

How about you? Are you working?

Yes, me too, I am working.

Me, I am not dancing also I'm not working.

I am eating.

¹ The Anishinaabemowin name for Gull Bay is **Giiyaashko-Zaagiing**.

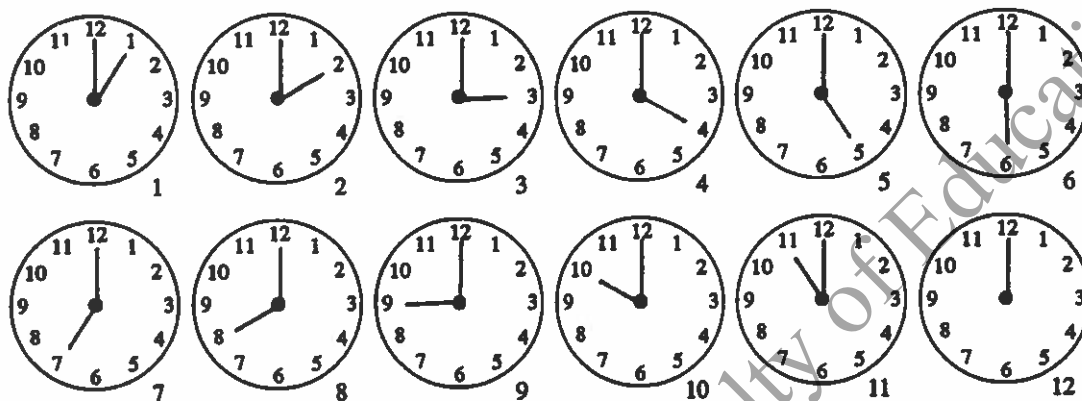
INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 6

Exercise A

What Time Is It?

Listening and Speaking:

1. Listen carefully as your instructor reads the times displayed on the following clocks. The instructor will repeat the words three times the first time around, then, repeat after him. The English translations are on page 74.

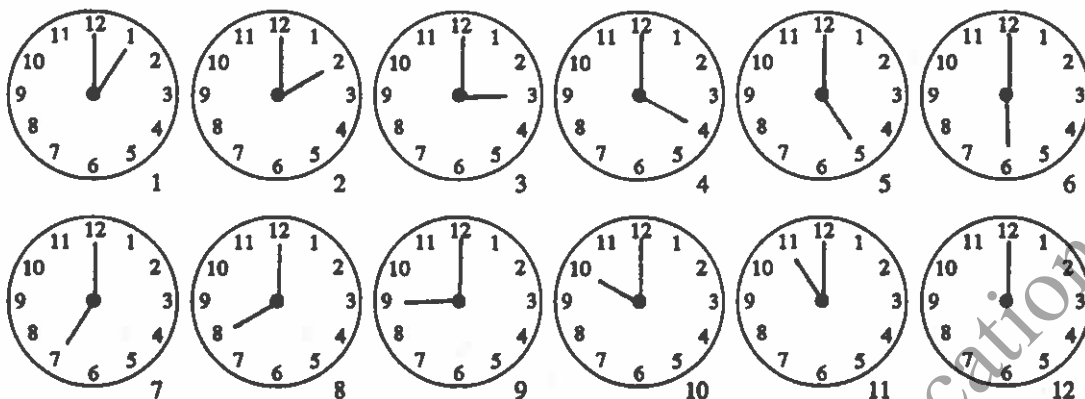


Aan endaso-dibai'iganeg? (or: Aan ezhiseg?)

Bezhigo-	diba'igane
Niizho-	diba'igane
Niso-	diba'igane
Niiyo-	diba'igane
Naano-	diba'igane
Ningodwaaso-	diba'igane
Niizhwaaso-	diba'igane
Nishwaaswi-	diba'igane
Zhaangaswi-	diba'igane
Midaaso-	diba'igane
Midaaso ashi bezhigo-	diba'igane
Midaaso ashi niizho-	diba'igane

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 6

Understanding and Practice Writing:



2. In this exercise you should look at the clocks above and say the time in Anishinaabemowin. Then write it in the corresponding space below. The first one is done for you. Check your answers and spelling from the previous page.

Aan endaso-diba'iganeg?

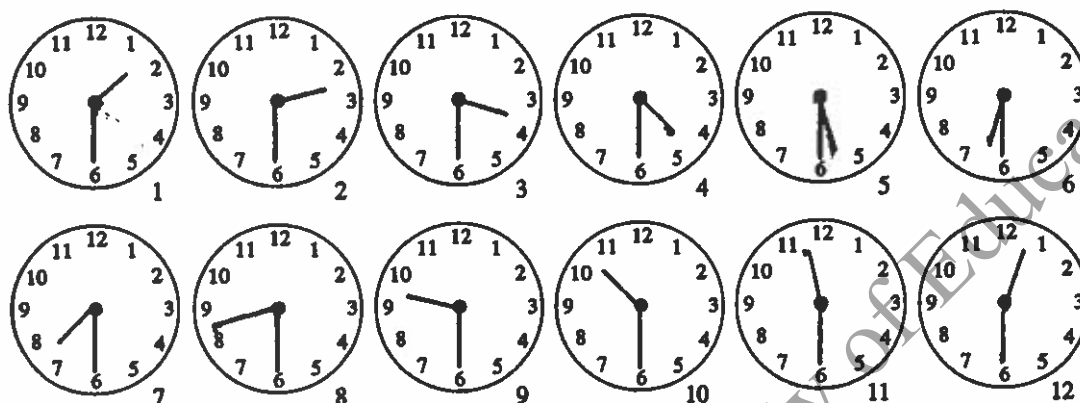
1. Bezhigo-diba'igane.
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 6

Exercise B

Listening and Speaking:

1. Listen carefully as your instructor reads the time displayed on the following clocks. The instructor will repeat the words three times the first time around, then, repeat after him. English translations are on page 74 and 75.



Aan eshihsek?

Bezhig ashi aabita

Niizho- ashi aabita

Niso- ashi aabita

Niiyo- ashi aabita

Naano- ashi aabita

Ningodwaaso- ashi aabita

Niizhwaaso- ashi aabita

Nishwaaso- ashi aabita

Zhaangaso- ashi aabita

Midaaswi ashi aabita

Midaaswi ashi bezhigo- aabita

Midaaswi ashi niizho- aabita

diba'igane

diba'igane

diba'igane

diba'igane

diba'igane

diba'igane

diba'igane

diba'igane

diba'igane

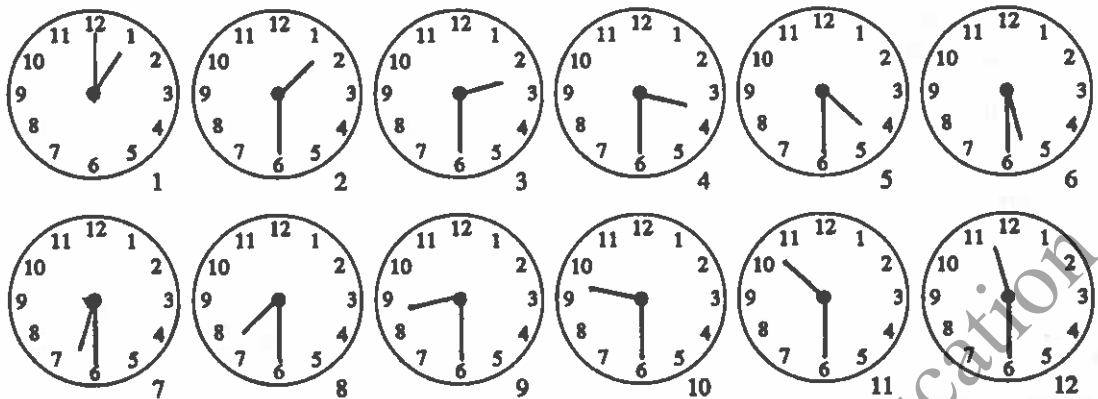
diba'igane

diba'igane

diba'igane

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 6

Understanding and Practice Writing:



2. In this exercise you should look at the clocks above, and say the time in Severn Ojibwe. Then write it in the corresponding space below. The first one is done for you. Check your answers and spelling from the previous page.

1. Bezhigo-diba'igane
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 6

Exercise C

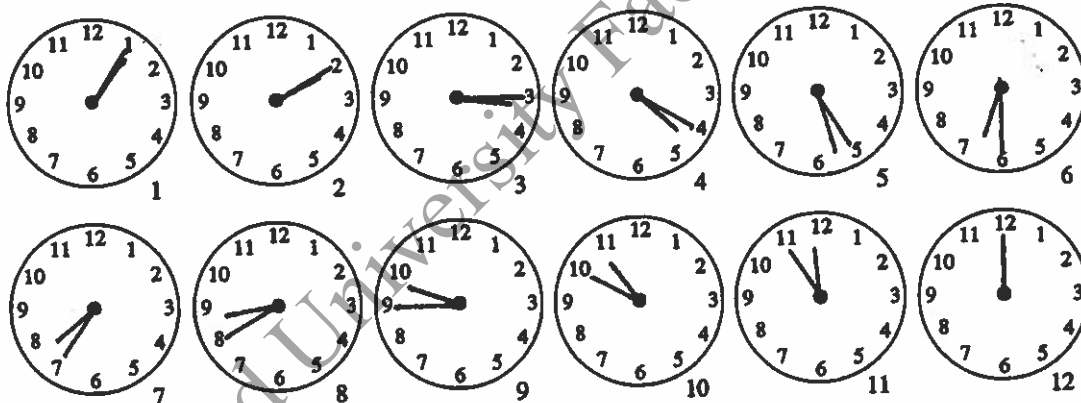
Listening and Speaking:

- Before we move on asking what time it is, we need to add some numbers first.
Let's start from fifteen (15) to sixty (60). Translations are on page 75.

Midaaswi ashi naanan	_____
Niishtana	_____
Niishtana ashi naanan	_____
Nisimidana	_____
Nisimidana ashi naanan	_____
Niimidana	_____
Niimidana ashi naanan	_____
Naanimidana	_____
Naanimidana ashi naanan	_____
Ningodwaasimidana	_____

Listening and Speaking:

- Listen carefully as your instructor reads the time displayed on the following clocks.
Translations on page 75.

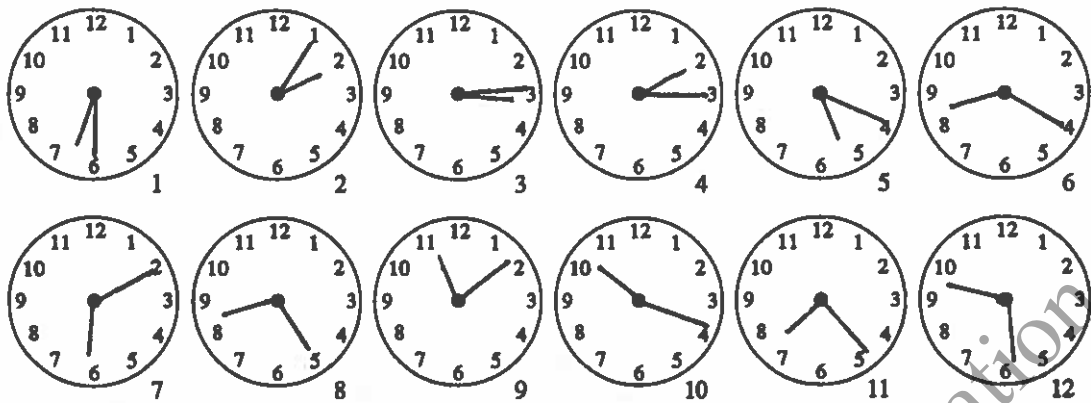


Aan ezhiseg? (or Aan endaso-diba'iganeg?)

- Naano-diba'igaans ishkwa-bezhigo-diba'iganeg.
- Midaaso-diba'igaans ishkwa-niizho-diba'iganeg.
- Midaaswi ashi naanan diba'igaans ishkwa-niso-diba'iganeg.
- Niishtana diba'igaans ishkwa-niiyo-diba'iganeg.
- Niishtana ashi naanan diba'igaans ishkwa-naano-diba'iganeg.
- Ningodwaaswi ashi aabita.
- Niishtana ashi naanan diba'igaans jibwaa-nishwaaswi-diba'iganeg.
- Niishtana diba'igaans jibwaa-zhaangaso-diba'iganeg.
- Midaaswi ashi naanan diba'igaans jibwaa-midaaso-diba'iganeg.
- Midaaso-diba'igaans jibwaa-midaaswi ashi bezhig diba'iganeg.
- Naano-diba'igaans jibwaa-naawakweg. [noon] OR ...jibwaa-abitoo-dibikak. [midnight]
- Naawakwe. [noon] OR Aabitoo-dibikad. [midnight].

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 6

Understanding and Practice Writing:



3. In this exercise, you should look at the clocks above and say the time in Anishinaabemowin. Then write it in the corresponding space below. All of the answers will contain the words **diba'igaans**, which means "minutes" and **ishkwaa-** which means "after."

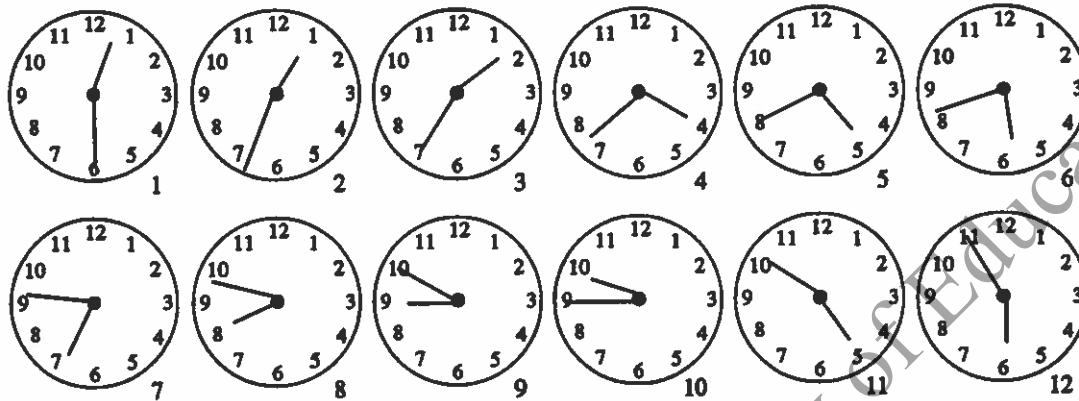
1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 6

Exercise D

Listening and Speaking:

1. Listen carefully as your instructor reads the time displayed on the following clocks. All of the answers will contain the word **jibwaa-** which means "before," except #1, which is 'twelve-thirty.' The English translations are on page 75.



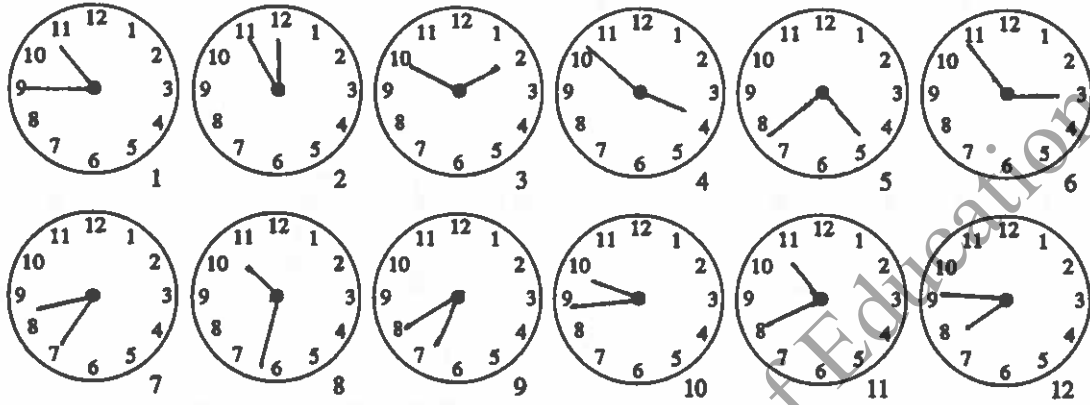
Aan ezhiseg? (OR Aan endaso-diba'iganeg?)

1. Aabita naawakwe (noon).
2. Niishtana ashi niizhwaaswi-diba'igaans jibwaa-bezhigo-diba'iganeg.
3. Niishtana ashi naano-diba'igaans jibwaa-niizho-diba'iganeg.
4. Niishtana ashi niizhin diba'igaans jibwaa-niiyo-diba'iganeg.
5. Niishtana diba'igaans jibwaa-naano-diba'iganeg.
6. Midaaso ashi nishwaaswi-diba'igaans jibwaa-ningodwaaswi-diba'iganeg.
7. Midaaso ashi niwin-diba'igaans jibwaa-niizhwaaswi-diba'iganeg.
8. Midaaso ashi niizho-diba'igaans jibwaa-nishwaaswi-diba'iganeg.
9. Midaaswi-diba'igaans jibwaa-zhaangaswi-diba'iganeg.
10. Midaaswi ashi naano diba'igaans jibwaa-diba'iganeg.
11. Nishwaaswi-diba'igaans jibwaa-naano-diba'iganeg.
12. Ningodwaaswi-diba'igaans jibwaa-ningodwaaso-diba'iganeg.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 6

Understanding and Practice Writing:

2. Listen carefully as your instructor reads the time displayed on the following clocks. All of the answers will contain the word **jibwaa**- 'before.' You have to do this exercise on your own. If you are doing this exercise in class, check your answers with your instructor.

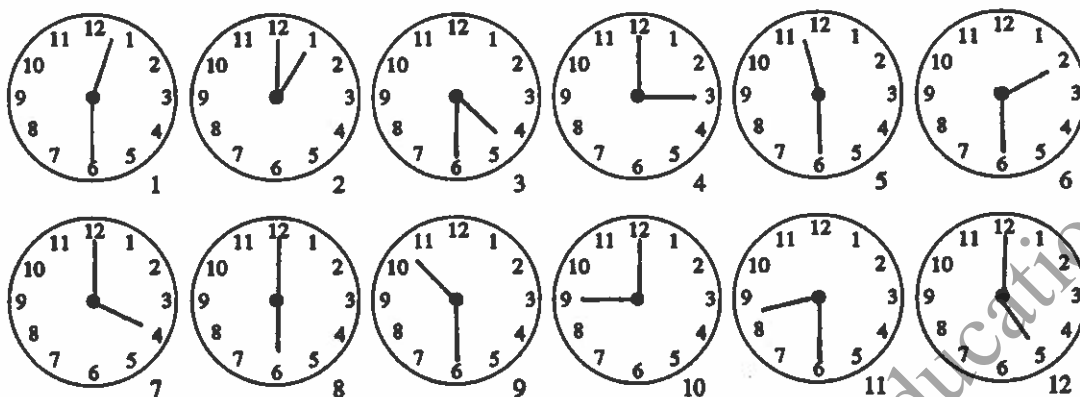


1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 6

Exercise E

Understanding and Practice Writing:



1. Look at the clocks above and say the time in Anishinaabemowin. Then write it in the corresponding space below. You have to do this exercise on your own. If you are doing this exercise in class, check your answers with your instructor.

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

6. _____

7. _____

8. _____

9. _____

10. _____

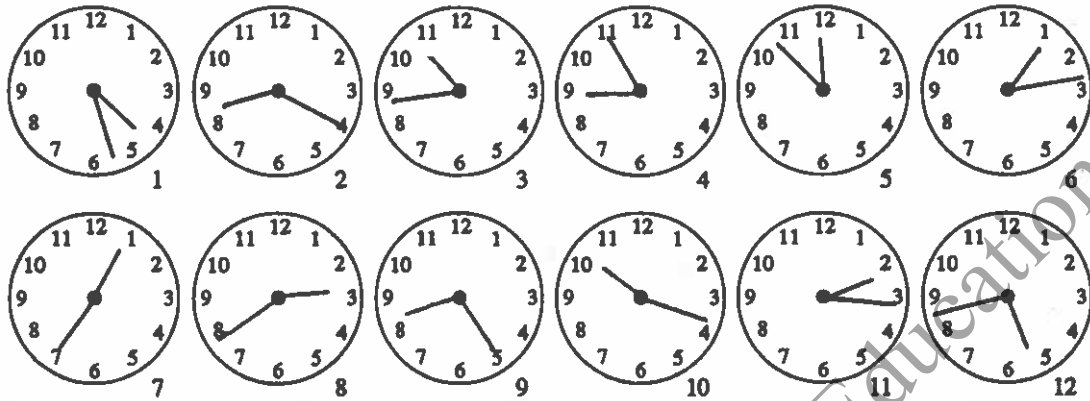
11. _____

12. _____

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 6

Exercise F

Continuation of Understanding and Practice Writing:



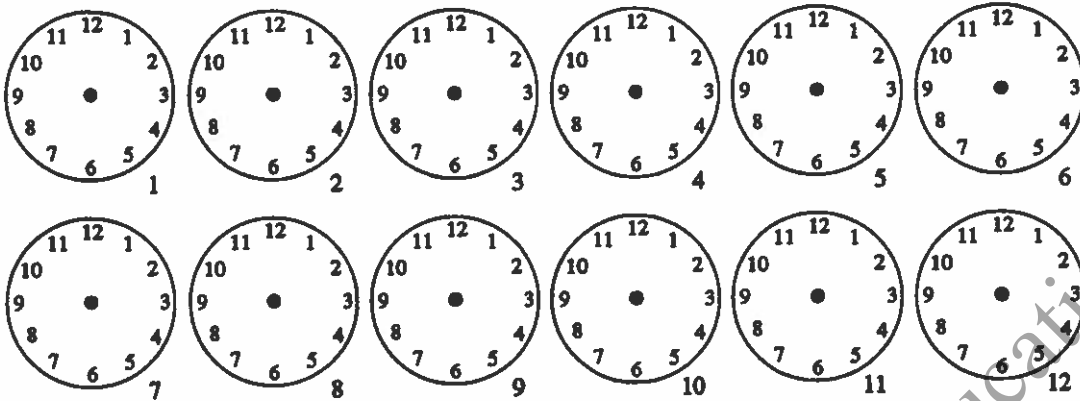
Look at the clocks above and say the time in Anishinaabemowin. Then write it in the corresponding space below. The answers may contain either *ishkwaa*- 'after' or *jibwaa*- 'before.' Please try to do this exercise on your own. If you are doing this exercise in class, check your answers with your instructor.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; LESSON 6

Exercise G

Review Test



Translate each of the following sentences into English. Then draw the hands in the appropriate position on the clocks above. Translations are on page 76.

1. Bezhigo-diba'igane. _____
2. Bezhigo- ashi aabita -diba'igane. _____
3. Niishtana ashi niwin ishkwa-niizho-diba'iganeg. _____
4. Midaaswi ashi niso-diba'igaans ishkwa-naano-diba'iganeg. _____
5. Midaaswi ashi naano-diba'igaans jibwaa-zhaangaswi-diba'iganeg. _____
6. Niishtana diba'igaans ishkwa-midaaswi-diba'iganeg. _____
7. Niishtana ashi niizhwaaswi jibwaa-ningodwaaso-diba'iganeg. _____
8. Nishwaaswi-diba'igaans jibwaa-nishwaaswi-diba'iganeg. _____
9. Midaaswi ashi niizho-diba'igaans ishkwa-niso-diba'iganeg. _____
10. Ningodwaaswi-diba'igaans ishkwa-ningodwaaswi-diba'iganeg. _____
11. Niishtana ashi niizho-diba'igaans jibwaa-midaaswi- ashi bezhigo- diba'iganeg. _____
12. Niishtana dibai'igaans jibwaa-naawakweg (OR jibwaa-aabitoo-dibikak). _____

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; REVIEW LESSONS

UNIT 1: Let's Look Back at What You Have Learned - Lessons 1 to 6

1. Vocabulary - Review the words you know: Translations are on pages 77 and 78.

A. Nominals

Animate Nouns:

akik	emikwaanens	nitiiwakik
bakwezhiganikaan	gizhaabikizigan	odaabaanens
bine	giigoo	waaboos
diba'igiiziswaan	napenh	zhiishiib

Pronouns:

niin	giin	wiin
geniin	gegiin	gewiin
niinitam	giinitam	wiinitam

Inanimate Nouns:

abwewin	looloot	waakaa'igan
adoopowin	mijim	waasechigan
anishinaabemowin	minikwaajigan	waawan
apabiwin	mookomaan	wiigiwaam
babagiwayaanegamig	nibaagan	wiisagad
badaka'igan	nibi	wiyyaas
bimide	nitii	zhiiwitaagan
doodooshaaboo	ombaasin	ziinzibaakwad
ishkwaandem	onaagan	
jiimaan	opin	

B. Verbs

You have learned the following IMPERATIVE forms:

anokiin	biindigen	maajaan
ashi	biizh	nagamon
atoon	biizhaan	namadabin
bakite'o	boodawen	nibaan
bi-wiisinin	giwen	niibawin
biidoon	ikidon	wanishkaan

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; REVIEW LESSONS

You have also learned the following verbs and can make simple statements with them (you should also be able to make imperative forms for them as well):

Independent Verbs

aakozi	gotaaji	niimi
anokii	izhinikaazo	nishkaadizi
boodawe	jiibaakwe	odamino
debisinii	nagamo	wanishkaa
giiwe	nibaa	wiisini

C. Number Verbs

Animate Verbs:

bezhigo	naananiwag	zhaangasiwag
niizhiwag	ningodwaasiwag	midaasiwag
nisiwag	niizhwaasiwag	
niiwiwag	nishwaasiwag	

Inanimate Verbs:

bezhigwan	naananimoon	zhaangasinoon
niizhinoon	ningodwaasinoon	midaasinoon
nisinoon	niizhwaasinoon	
niwinoon	nishwaasinoon	

D. Particles

Numbers:

bezhig	ningodwaaswi	midaaso ashi bezhig
niizhin	niizhwaaswi	midaaso ashi niizhin
niswi	nishwaaswi	midaaso ashi niswi
niiwin	zhaangaswi	midaaso ashi niiwin
naanan	midaaswi	midaaso ashi naanan
midaaso ashi ningodwaaswi	niishtana ashi bezhig	
midaaso ashi niizhwaaswi	niishtana ashi niizhin	
midaaso ashi nishwaaswi	niishtana ashi niswi	
midaaso ashi zhaangaswi	niishtana ashi niiwin	
niishtana		

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; REVIEW LESSONS

Particles:

agwajiing	dash	miigwech
ahaaw	debwe	miinawaa
anaamiya'ii	eta	na!
apane	eya	o'omaa
apii	gaawiin	omwaadi
awasaya'ii	gaye	opimeya'ii
aandi	geyaabi	waasa
aaniinpii	gwayak	wagijiya'ii
aazha	i'ima	wiiba
baabige	ina (na)	zhiibaa'ii
beshonjiya'ii	iwedi	
biindig	iwidi	
biinjiya'ii	maagizhaa	

E. Expressions

Aaniin ezhise? / Aaniin endaso-diba'iganeg	Wegonen iwe?
Aaniin endoodaman?	Giin dash (wiin)?
Aaniin endoodamaan?	Ginisidotaan ina?
Aaniin endoodang?	Osha.
Aaniin ezhinikaazoyan?	Miinawaa ikidon!
Aaniin ezhinikaazod?	(N)indizhinikaaz
Aaniin minik?	(N)indoonjii
Aaniin endasingin?	Ninisidotaan
Aaniin endasiwaad?	Bekaa ikidon!
Aandi wenjiyan?	Izhise
Awenen awe?	

2. Structure - Things you can do with the words you know:

- Find the difference between an animate and an inanimate noun by using them in different kinds of sentences.
- Give singular and plural commands.
- Give first, second, and third person forms of verbs.
- Ask questions in writing and answer them with positive and negative statements.
- Use locative endings to indicate where things are. To be more specific about a location, use additional particle locative forms.
- Recognize and use counting numbers and number verbs.
- Tell time.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1: TRANSLATION SECTION

Unit 1; Lessons 1-6

In this section we have provided English translations for the Anishinaabemowin words and sentences introduced in Unit 1.

Lesson 1:

24 Articles (page 1)

- | | | | |
|--------------|---------------|------------|----------------|
| 1. Plate | 2. Cup | 3. Knife | 4. Spoon |
| 5. Fork | 6. Salt | 7. Pepper | 8. Lard |
| 9. Water | 10. Teakettle | 11. Pot | 12. Frying pan |
| 13. Bannock | 14. Partridge | 15. Rabbit | 16. Meat |
| 17. Bread | 18. Egg | 19. Milk | 20. Fish |
| 21. Porridge | 22. Potato | 23. Carrot | 24. Duck |

Lesson 2:

Numbers (pages 11, 12)

- | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. One | 2. Two | 3. Three | 4. Four |
| 5. Five | 6. Six | 7. Seven | 8. Eight |
| 9. Nine | 10. Ten | 11. Eleven | 12. Twelve |
| 13. Thirteen | 14. Fourteen | 15. Fifteen | 16. Sixteen |
| 17. Seventeen | 18. Eighteen | 19. Nineteen | 20. Twenty |
| 21. Twenty one | 22. Twenty two | 23. Twenty three | 24. Twenty four |

Number Verbs (page 20)

Animate

There is one rabbit.
There are two partridges.
There are three fish.
There are four spoons.
There are five carrots.
There are six pieces of bannock.
There are seven pots.
There are eight ducks.
There are nine teakettles.
There are ten frying pans.

Inanimate

There is one egg.
There are two plates.
There are three knives.
There are four forks.
There are five eggs.
There are six peppers.
There are seven cartons of lard.
There are eight pieces of meat.
There are nine cartons of milk.
There are ten containers of salt.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; TRANSLATION SECTION

Lesson 4:

Imperatives (page 30)

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Come in! | 6. Build the fire! |
| 2. Sit down! | 7. Go home! |
| 3. Stand up! | 8. Sing! |
| 4. Come here ! | 9. Go to sleep! |
| 5. Go away or leave! | 10. Get up! |

Lesson 4, Exercise I (1) (page 40)

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| 1. Kitchen table | 2. Chair | 3. Stove | 4. Window |
| 5. Bed | 6. Door | 7. House | 8. Tipi |
| 9. Airplane | 10. Canoe | 11. Tent | 12. Car |

Lesson 4, Exercise I (2) (page 42)

Locatives:

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. On the kitchen table | 7. On the house |
| 2. On the chair | 8. On the tipi |
| 3. On the stove | 9. On the airplane |
| 4. At the window | 10. In the canoe |
| 5. On the bed | 11. On the tent |
| 6. At the door | 12. On the car |

Lesson 4, Exercise K:

Dialogues (page 44)

- | | | | |
|--------|-----------------------|-----|--------------------------------|
| 1. (A) | Look! There! | (B) | Come here! |
| | Where? | | Where? |
| | Over there? | | Over here? Sit right here! |
| | Who is that? | | Put food on the kitchen table. |
| | Rabbit and partridge. | | Where the salt and pepper? |
| | Say it again! | | Right there beside the plate. |
| | Partridge and rabbit. | | Pass the bannock and lard. |
| | I understand now. | | You too eat! |
| | Thank you. | | Okay, thank you. |

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1: TRANSLATION SECTION

Lesson 5, Exercise A:

(page 45)

Verbs:

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. Singing | 2. Angry | 3. Sleeping | 4. Eating |
| 5. Sick | 6. Going home | 7. Dancing | 8. Full |
| 9. Build a fire | 10. Cooking | 11. Working | 12. Playing |

Lesson 5, Exercise G (c) (page 50)

- | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. Me too | 5. Not me | 9. Yes me | 13. My turn |
| 2. You too | 6. Not you | 10. Yes you | 14. Your turn |
| 3. Her/Him too | 7. Not him/her | 11. Yes her/him | 15. Him/her turn |
| 4. Also James | 8. Not Joan | 12. Yes Mary | 16. Jim's turn |

Lesson 5, Exercise G (d):

(pages 50-51)

Verbs:

- | | | |
|--|--|---|
| 1. I am singing
You are singing
He/she is singing | 2. I am angry
You are angry
He/she is angry | 3. I am sleeping
You are sleeping
He/she is sleeping |
| 4. I am eating
You are eating
He/she is eating | 5. I am sick
You are sick
He/she is sick | 6. I am going home
You are going home
he/she is going home |
| 7. I am dancing
You are dancing
He/she is dancing | 8. I am full
You are full
He/she is full | 9. I am building a fire
You are building a fire
He/she is building a fire |
| 10. I am cooking
You are cooking
He/she is cooking | 11. I am working
You are working
He/she is working | 12. I am playing
You are playing
He/she is playing |

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; TRANSLATION SECTION

Lesson 5 Exercise I:

(page 53)

Dialogues:

- (a) (1) Henry, come here!
Come and eat!
Sit down, eat!
Pass the fish also potato. Thank you.
More Potato?
No, I am already full.
- Are you working?
Yes, How about you?
No, I am sick.
Are you going home right now? (right away?)
Yes, I am going home soon.
Not me. Maybe I am working still.

- (d) (1) Say it again!
(page 54) Are you going home now?
My name is Mary.
Do you want some more fish?
Is Samuel sleeping?
I am not leaving.
Bring the knife also plate.
- Is that true?
Come here right now! (right away)
come and eat!
Are you angry?
Are you full?
Yes, thanks.
Bring the spoon, and also sugar.

- (2) Say in Ojibwe:
(page 54)

(N)indaakoz.
Gidaakoz ina?
Aakozi.
Sam ina aakozi?
Gidaakoz.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1: TRANSLATION SECTION

Lesson 5 Exercise J:

(page 55)

Write in Ojibwe:

- (1) Aaniin ezhinikaazoyan?
George (n)indizhinikaaz.
Aandi wenjiian?
Giiyaashko-Zaagiing (n)indoonjii.
Debwe na? Giiyaashko-Zaagiing.
Geniin, Giiyaashko-Zaagiing (n)indoonjii.
- (2). Sam nibaa. Gegiin ina ginibaa?
Gaawiin niin. Niwiisin.
Biizh bakwezhiganikaan. Gaye bine.
Biidoon mookomaan! Badaka'igan gaye.
Geyaabi na bakwezhiganikaan?
Gaawiin, aazha (n)indebisinii. Miigwech.
- (3). Mary na niimi?
Gaawiin, anokii.
Giin dash wiin? Gidanokii na?
Eya' geniin (n)indanokii.
Niin, gaawiin niniimisii gaye gaawiin (n)indanokiisii.
Niwiisin.

Lesson 6:

(page 56)

Exercise A

What time is it?

It is one o'clock.
It is two o'clock.
It is three o'clock.
It is four o'clock.
It is five o'clock.
It is six o'clock.

It is seven o'clock.
It is eight o'clock.
It is nine o'clock.
It is ten o'clock.
It is eleven o'clock.
it is twelve o'clock.

Exercise B

(page 58)

What time is it?

It is half past one. / It is one-thirty.
It is half past two. / It is two-thirty.
It is half past three. / It is three-thirty.
It is half past four. / It is four-thirty.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; TRANSLATION SECTION

It is half past five. / It is five-thirty.
It is half past six. / It is six-thirty.
It is half past seven. / It is seven-thirty.
It is half past eight. / It is eight-thirty.
It is half past nine. / It is nine-thirty.
It is half past ten. / It is ten-thirty.
It is half past eleven. / It is eleven-thirty.
It is half past twelve. / It is twelve-thirty.

Exercise C

(page 60)

- | | | |
|------|-------------|------------|
| (1). | fifteen | forty |
| | twenty | forty-five |
| | twenty-five | fifty |
| | thirty | fifty-five |
| | thirty-five | sixty |

- (2). What time is it?

(page 60)

- 1). Five minutes after one o'clock.
- 2). Ten minutes after two o'clock.
- 3). Fifteen minutes after three o'clock.
- 4). Twenty minutes after four o'clock.
- 5). Twenty five minutes after five o'clock.
- 6). Thirty five minutes after seven o'clock.
- 8). Forty minutes after eight o'clock.
- 9). Forty five minutes after nine o'clock.
- 10). Fifty minutes after ten o'clock.
- 11). Fifty five minutes after eleven o'clock.
- 12). Explained in text already.

Exercise D

(page 62)

What time is it?

- 1). It is half past twelve. / It is twelve thirty.
- 2). It is twenty seven minutes before one o'clock.
- 3). It is twenty-five minutes before two o'clock.
- 4). It is twenty-three minutes before four o'clock.
- 5). It is twenty minutes before five o'clock.
- 6). It is eighteen minutes before six o'clock.
- 7). It is fourteen minutes before seven o'clock.
- 8). It is twelve minutes before eight o'clock.
- 9). It is ten minutes before nine o'clock.
- 10). It is fifteen minutes before ten o'clock.
- 11). It is eight minutes before five o'clock.
- 12). It is six minutes before six o'clock.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1: TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise G Review Test

(page 66)

- 1). It is one o'clock.
- 2). It is half past one. / It is one-thirty.
- 3). It is twenty-four minutes after two o'clock.
- 4). It is thirteen minutes after five o'clock.
- 5). It is fifteen minutes before nine o'clock.
- 6). it is twenty minutes after ten o'clock.
- 7). It is twenty-seven minutes before six o'clock.
- 8). It is eight minutes before eight o'clock.
- 9). It is twelve minutes after three o'clock.
- 10). It is six minutes before six o'clock.
- 11). It is twenty-two minutes before eleven o'clock.
- 12). It is twenty minutes before twelve o'clock.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1; TRANSLATION SECTION

A. Nominals

(page 67)

Animate Nouns:

pail/pot	teaspoon	teakettle
bannock	stove	car
partridge	fish	rabbit
clock	bread	duck

Pronouns:

me	you	him/her
me too	you too	him/her too
it's my turn	it's your turn	it's his/her turn

Inanimate nouns:

frying pan	rolled oats, porridge	house
table	food	window
native language	cup	egg
chair	knife	tent
canvas tent	bed	pepper
fork	water	meat
lard	tea	salt
milk	airplane	sugar
door	dish, plate	
canoe	potato	

B. Verbs

(page 67)

Imperative Verbs:

Work!	Come inside!	Leave!
Put/place him!	Bring him!	Sing!
Put/place it!	Come here!	Sit down!
Hit him!	Make a fire!	Sleep!
Come and eat!	Go home!	Stand!
Bring it!	Say it!	Get up!

Independent Verbs:

(page 30)

is sick	is afraid	is dancing
is working	is named	is angry
is making a fire	is cooking	is playing
is full from eating	is singing	is eating

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 1: TRANSLATION SECTION

C. Number Verbs

(page 68)

Animate Verbs:

there is one of animate	there are five of animate	there are nine of animate
there are two of animate	there are six of animate	there are ten of animate
there are three of animate	there are seven of animate	
there are four of animate	there are eight of animate	

Inanimate Verbs:

there is one of inanimate	there are five of inanimate	there are nine of inanimate
there are two of inanimate	there are six of inanimate	there are ten of inanimate
there are three of inanimate	there are seven of inanimate	
there are four of inanimate	there are eight of inanimate	

D. Particles

Numbers:

one	six	eleven	sixteen	twenty-one
two	seven	twelve	seventeen	twenty-two
three	eight	thirteen	eighteen	twenty-three
four	nine	fourteen	nineteen	twenty-four
five	ten	fifteen	twenty	

Particles:

outside	and, but	thank you
okay	true	and
inside it	only	Look!
always	yes	here
when	no	right here
on the other side of it	and	alongside it
where	still, yet	far
when?	correct	on top of it
now, then, already	there	hurry, soon, early
right away	question marker	underneath it
close to it	that over there	
indoors, inside	over there	
inside it	perhaps	

E. Expressions

What time is it?	How many? (animate)	Say it again?
What are you doing?	Where are you from?	My name is . . .
What am I doing?	Who is that?	I am from . . .
What is he doing?	What is that?	I understand.
What is your name?	How about you?	Say it slowly.
How much?	Do you understand?	The time is . . .
How many? (inanimate)	Emphatic, particle	

Part Two



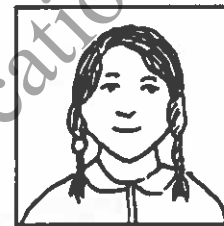
Makwa

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 1

Exercise A

Singular and Plural Nouns and Verbs

1. Here are some nouns to learn, with their singular and plural forms given. Listen carefully as the instructor says these words. Pay particular attention to the endings of the plural forms. English translations are on page 169.



1. ikwe
2. ikwewag

3. inini
4. ininiwag

5. abinoojii
6. abinoojiiyag

7. gwiiwizens
8. gwiiwizensag

9. ikwezens
10. ikwezensag

#___ abinoojii
#___ ininiwag
#___ ikwezensag
#___ ikwe
#___ abinoojiiyag
#___ gwiiwizens
#___ ikwewag
#___ inini
#___ ikwezens
#___ gwiiwizensag

2. Fill in the missing letters to complete the words.

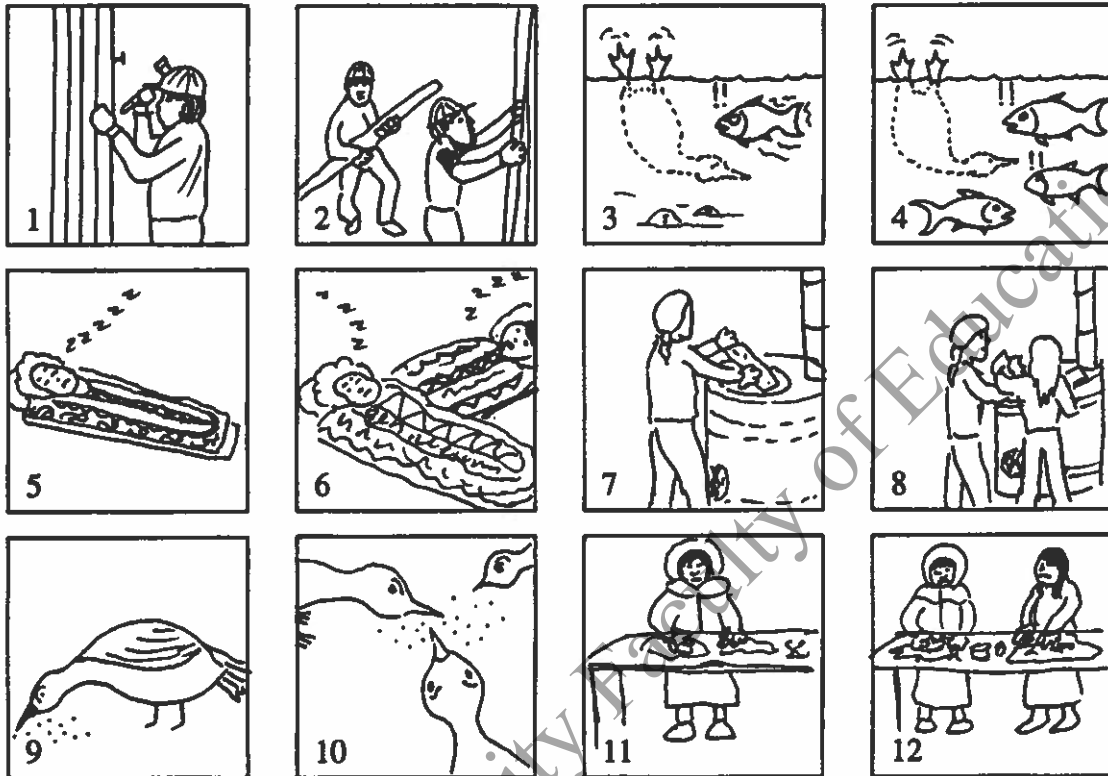
1. i ___ e
2. i ___ w ___ w ___
3. i ___ i ___
4. i ___ n ___ g
5. a ___ n ___ j ___

6. a ___ n ___ j ___ y ___
7. gw ___ w ___ z ___ s
8. gw ___ w ___ z ___ s ___
9. ___ k ___ z ___ s
10. ___ k ___ z ___ s ___

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE(Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 1

Exercise B

What are They Doing?



1. Listen to and imitate the sentences describing the following pictures. Then identify each one by number. English translations on page 169.

- #___ Wiisini bine.
- #___ Gotaajiwag giigooyag
- #___ Anokiiwag ininiwag.
- #___ Anokii ikwe.
- #___ Wiisiniwag binewag
- #___ Boodawe ikwezens.
- #___ Anokiiwag ikwewag.
- #___ Nibaa abinoojii.
- #___ Gotaaji giigoo.
- #___ Anokii inini.
- #___ Nibaawag abinoojiyag
- #___ Boodawewag ikwezensag.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 1

2. Read and understand the sentences below. Then translate them in the Native language.

- A. _____
The man is working.
- B. _____
The men are working.
- C. _____
The fish is afraid.
- D. _____
The fish are afraid.
- E. _____
The baby is sleeping.
- F. _____
The babies are sleeping.
- G. _____
The girl is building (or making) a fire.
- H. _____
The girls are building (or making) a fire.
- I. _____
The partridge is eating.
- J. _____
The partridges are eating.
- K. _____
The woman is working.
- L. _____
The women are working.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE(Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 1

3. Now you know four verb forms as follows. English translations on page 169.
(Practice by reading aloud.)

1) I'm_____	ninibaa	(n)indoodamin	ninishkaadiz
2) You're_____	ginibaa	gidoodamin	ginishkaadiz
3) He/she's_____	nibaa	odamino	nishkaadizi
4) They're_____	nibaawag	odaminowag	nishkaadiziwag

Let's also practise these forms in the negative.

1) I'm not_____	gaawiin ninibaasii	(n)indoodaminosii	ninishkaadizisii
2) You're not_____	gaawiin ginibaasii	gidoodaminosii	ginishkaadizisii
3) He/she's not_____	gaawiin nibaasii	odaminosii	nishkaadizisii
4) They're not_____	gaawiin nibaasiiwag	odaminosiiwag	nishkaadizisiiwag

Although you already have a very good idea how to form the negative response, do more practice in writing by using the verbs that you already have learned.

4. Here are some verbs listed below to be used for further exercises. You might have to use a separate sheet to do the exercises properly.

	anokii aakozi	boodawe giwe	nagamo wanishkaa
1. I'm_____	_____	_____	_____
2. You're_____	_____	_____	_____
3. He/she's_____	_____	_____	_____
4. They're_____	_____	_____	_____
1. I'm_____	_____	_____	_____
2. You're_____	_____	_____	_____
3. He/she's_____	_____	_____	_____
4. They're_____	_____	_____	_____

5. **Negatives:** English translations on page 169.

1. I'm not_____	_____	_____	_____
2. You're not_____	_____	_____	_____
3. He/she's not	_____	_____	_____
4. They're not	_____	_____	_____
1. I'm not_____	_____	_____	_____
2. You're not_____	_____	_____	_____
3. He/she's not	_____	_____	_____
4. They're not	_____	_____	_____

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 1

6. Read each phrase below, and be sure to pronounce the words carefully. Be sure you know the meaning of each phrase you read. Use your textbook to help you with the meanings of the words, if necessary.

Gotaajiwag abinoojiiyag.

Giiwewag gwiiwizensag.

Ninibaa.

Anokiiwag ikwezensag.

Debisiniwag ina binewag?

Nishkaadiziwag ina gwiizensag?

Gaawiin, boodawewag.

Maagizhaa aakoziwag.

Wiisiniwag wiiba.

Nagamowag ikwewag.

Gotaajiwag ina giigooyag?

7. Say in Ojibwe:

They're angry.

They're working.

They're playing.

They're making a fire.

They're getting up.

They're sleeping.

They're sick.

They're eating.

They're singing.

They're dancing.

They're going home.

They're full.

They're cooking.

They're afraid.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE(Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 1

Exercise C

In this exercise, write your own dialogue by using singular and plural nouns and verbs and as many particles as you can. English translations on page 170.

For example:

- 1 - Aandi abinoojiiyag?
- 2 - Odaminowag agwajiing
- 1 - Aandi agwajiing?
- 2 - Iwidi jiigiya'ii wiigiwaaming.
- 1 - Gegin ina gidoodamin?
- 2 - Gaawiin, (n)indanokii. Giin dash wiin?
- 1 - Gaawiin, geniin (n)indanokii

Sharing What You Have Learned:

With your partner practice reading the above dialogue, as well as your own. Pay particular attention to pronunciation and grammatical structure. Your instructor will give you further instructions.

Exercise D

The Voluntative

1. It is possible to put the prefix "wii-" on most verbs. Doing this gives the idea of "want to" or "intend to." Listen to, read, and understand the following:

Example: Voluntative Prefix + Verb

wii- + wiisini
"wants to" "eat"

Here are some more examples both in statement and negative forms.

1st line	giuwe	wii-giwe	wii-giwe na?	gaawiin wii-giwesii
2nd line	nibaawag	wii-nibaawag	wii-nibaawag na?	gaawiin wii-niaahiiwag
3rd line	gidanokii	giwii-anokii	giwii-anokii na?	gaawiin giwii-anokiisii
4th line	boodawe	wii-boodawe	wii-boodawe na?	gaawiin wii-boodawesii

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 1

2. Now let's work with some new verbs. Practice reading aloud the verbs under each picture. As you read, think about what each verb means. Pay particular attention to the prefixes on each verb. These prefixes indicate the person who is doing the action of the verb. English translations on page 170.



niminikwe
giminikwe
minikwe
minikwewag



nimaw
gimaw
mawi
mawiwag



nibaap
gibaap
baapi
baapiwag



niwiisin
giwiisin
wiisini
wiisiniwag

Now read each of the verbs again, this time adding the voluntative prefix to each one. Here are some examples for you. The English translations are on page 170.

niwii-minikwe

giwii-baap

wii-mawi

3. Read and understand the following dialogues with a partner for practice speaking.

- A. 1 - Mawi abinoojii.
2 - Maagizhaa wii-minikwe.
1 - Doodooshaaboo na?
2 - Minikwe aazha.
1 - Wii-nibaa.
2 - Nibaa aazha.
- B. 1 - Aandi ikwewag?
2 - Boodawewag. Wii-jiibaakwewag.
1 - Aandi?
2 - Wedi bajiishka'ogaaning.
1 - Wii-wiisiniwag na?
2 - Eya.
1 - Gegiin bi-wiisinin.
- C. 1 - Nishkaadiziwag na gwiiwizensag?
2 - Gaawiin, anokiiwag.
1 - Wii-giiewag na wiiba?
2 - Eya, wii-giiewag.
1 - Wii-wiisiniwag gaye wii-nibaawag. Giin dash wiin?
2 - Geniin niwii-giawe naanaage.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE(Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 1

4. Some Useful Expressions

Amanj igo.	I don't know.
Aaniin endoodaman?	What are you doing? (singular)
Aaniin endoodamaan?	What am I doing?
Aaniin endoodang?	What is he/she doing?
Aaniin endoodamowaad?	What are they doing?
Aaniin endoodameg?	What are <u>you</u> doing? (pl.)
Aaniin endoodamang?	What are <u>we</u> doing? (pl. inclusive)
Aaniin waa-doodaman?	What do you want to do?
Aaniin waa-doodamaan?	What do I want to do?
Aaniin waa-doodang?	What does he/she want to do?
Aaniin waa-doodamowaad?	What do they want to do?
Aaniin waa-doodameg?	What do <u>you</u> want to do? (pl.)
Aaniin ezhinikaazod?	What is he/she called? (What's his name?)
Aaniin ezhinikaadeg?	What is it called? (What's its name?)
Gagwejim!	Ask him!
Wiindamaw!	Tell him!

- Now write your own dialogues. Try to use sentences which contain the prefix wii- in your dialogue.
- Sharing what you have learned with your partner, practice reading the dialogues in section #3 a, b, and c, as well as your own. Concentrate mainly on pronunciation and grammar structure. Your instructor will give you further instructions.

Exercise E

Reading and Understanding:

- Remember in Lesson One how it was important to distinguish singular from plural forms when giving commands? In the same way one must distinguish between these two ideas:

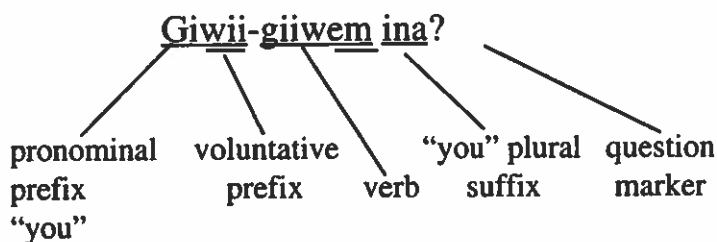
Giwii-giwe na?

Do you want to go home? (talking to one person)

Giwii-giiwem ina? (talking to more than one person)

Do you want to go home? (You plural)

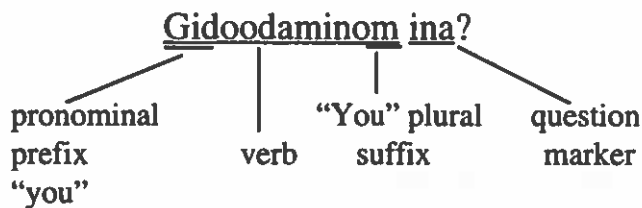
Example:



INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 1

Here are some more examples:

Do you want to:	play?	work?
Singular:	Giwii-odamin ina?	Giwii-anokii na?
Plural:	Giwii-odaminom ina?	Giwii-anokiim ina?
Are you:	playing?	working?
Singular:	Gidoodamin ina?	Gidanokii na?
Plural:	Gidoodaminom ina?	Gidanokiim ina?



To practice this distinction, work in groups of three. Each member of your group takes a turn asking "you" questions, first to only one member of the group, then to both. Ask different questions by using different AI verbs. Some are listed below.

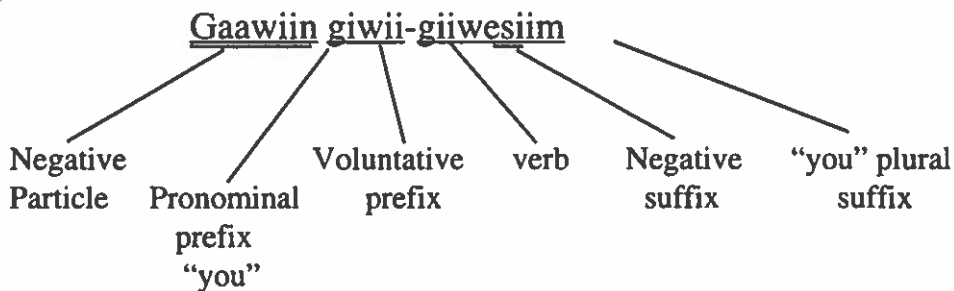
aakozi	giuwe	debinii
anokii	gotaaji	wanishkaa
nishkaadizi	nagamo	wiisini
jiibaakwe	nibaa	niimi

2. Negative forms with "you" plural

Continue practice speaking in groups with negative forms by using same verbs from the box above. Listen as your instructor says these examples. Notice particularly where the negative suffix *sii* occurs.

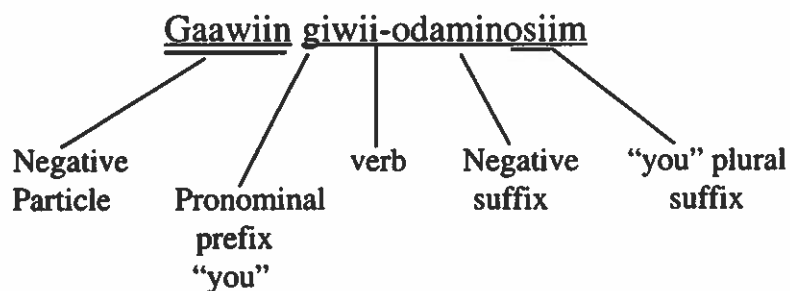
Examples:

You (plural) don't want to go home.



INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE(Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 1

You (Plural) are not playing.



Exercise F

Read the following two dialogues. Then write two of your own, using as many of the new expressions you have learned at the beginning of this lesson as you can. Here are 2 examples.

1. A: Aaniin endoodaman?
 B: Niin ina?
 A: Eya, giin.
 B: Nijiibaakwe. Giin dash wiin?
 A: Gaawiin niwii-jiibaakwesii.
 Niwii-odamin.
 B: Giwii-wiisin ina?
 A: Ahaaw, bangii eta.
 B: Geniin bangii niwii-wiisin.
2. A: Aaniin endoodamowaad?
 B: Gaawiin anokiisiwag. Nibaawag.
 A: Giin dash wiin?
 B: Gaawiin niwii-nibaasii. Niwii-anokii.
 A: Aandi?
 B: Jiigayi'ii waakaa'iganing.
 A: Geniin niwii-anokii.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 1

Exercise G

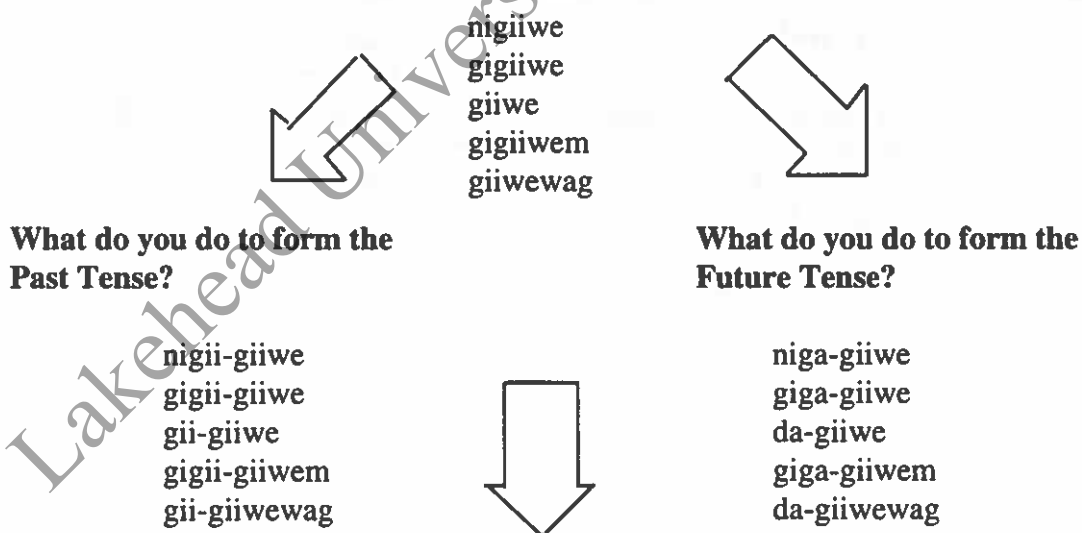
Yesterday, Today and Tomorrow

1. **Past, Present and Future Tenses.** When talking about time, you will need to know these expressions: English translations on page 171.

bijiinaago	yesterday
awasinaago	day before yesterday
weshkad	a long time ago
noongom gaa-giizhigak	today
noongom	now
waabang	tomorrow
awasiwaabang	day after tomorrow
wiiba	hurry! soon
naanaage	later
baanimaa / baamaa	much later
bekaa!	wait!
gaa mashi!	not yet
aaniinpai?	when?
apii	when

Note: Use "aaniinpai" only in a question. Use "apii" only in a statement.

2. **Starting with the Present Tense**



INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE(Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 1

3. Listen to these sentences, and think about what they mean: English translation on pages 172 and 173.

Noongom gaa-giizhigak (n)indanokii.

Bijiinaago ningii-anokii.

Waabang niga-anokii.

Giwii-nibaa na noongom?

Gigii-wii-nibaa na bijiinaago?

Giga-wii-nibaa na waabang?

Noongom odamino.

Awasinaago gii-odamino.

Awasiwaabang da-odamino.

Noongom ina gidaakoz?

Weshkad ina gigii-aakoz?

Baanimaa na giga-aakoz?

4. Now try using the tenses in your own speech. The first few are done for you: English translations on pages 172 and 173.

	going home	laughing	cooking	sick
I am _____	nigiwe	_____	_____	_____
I was _____	nigii-giwe	_____	_____	_____
I'll _____	niga-giwe	_____	_____	_____

	making a fire	crying	sleeping	angry
He is _____	boodawe	_____	_____	_____
He was _____	gii-boodawe	_____	_____	_____
He'll be _____	da-boodawe	_____	_____	_____

	working	scared	drinking	singing
They are _____	anokiiwag	_____	_____	_____
They were _____	gii-anokiiwag	_____	_____	_____
They'll be _____	da-anokiiwag	_____	_____	_____

	eating	drinking	playing	crying
You're (singular) _____	giwiisin	_____	_____	_____
You were _____	gigii-wiisin	_____	_____	_____
You'll be _____	giga-wiisin	_____	_____	_____

	laughing	sleeping	full
Are you (plural) _____	gibaapim ina?	_____	_____
Were you _____	gigii-baapim ina?	_____	_____
Will you be _____	giga-baapim ina?	_____	_____

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 1

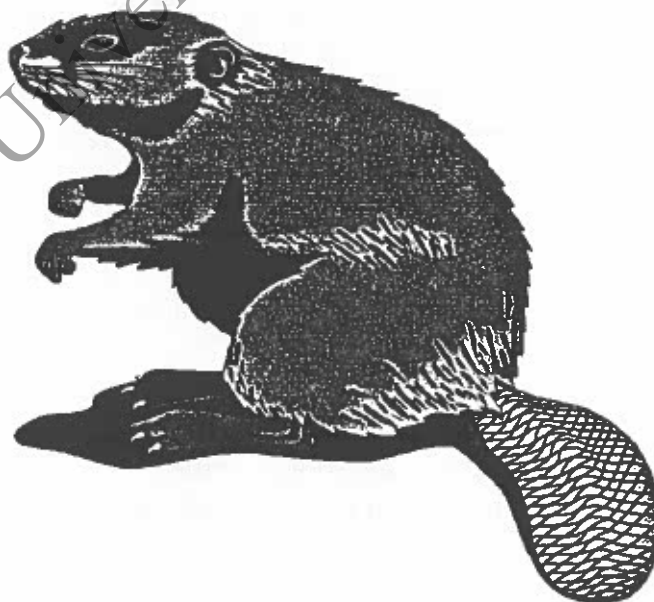
Exercise H

Using the Tenses

1. For practice speaking, work with a partner to create mini-dialogues using some of the words in numbers 3 and 4 on the previous pages. Make sure to use different tense forms.
2. Continue working with a partner, and think of your own short dialogues to write in which you will need to use past, present and future tenses.

For example:

- A. Gigii-anokii na bijiinaago?
Gaawiin, ningii-aakoz.
Noongom dash wiin, gidanokii na?
Eya, bangii eta. Giin dash wiin?
Eya, geniin ninga-anokii.
- B. Gigii-aakoz ina awasinaago?
Gaawiin, ningii-nibaa.
Noongom gaa-giizhigak (n)indoodamin.
Gegiin na giwii-odamin?
Gaawiin, baanimaa waabang ninga-odamin.



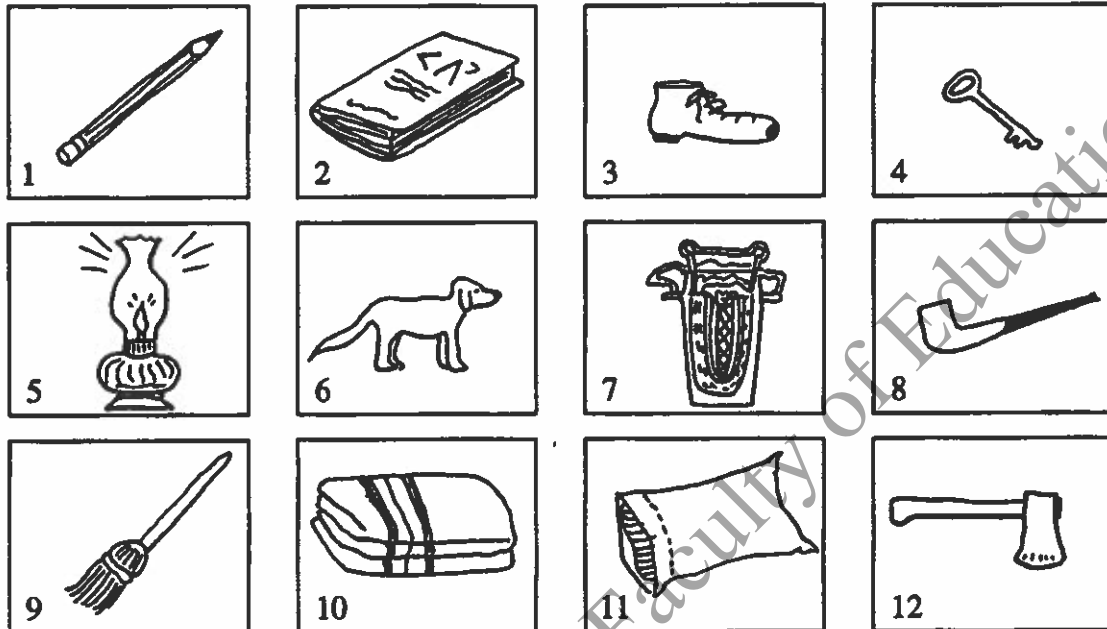
Amik

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE(Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 1

Exercise I

New Vocabulary

1. Listen carefully as your instructor says the following words.



Match the pictures to the words by writing the appropriate number beside each word. English translation on page 173.

Animosh	# _____	Ozhibii'iganaak ²	# _____
Makizin	# _____	Waabowayaan	# _____
Mazina'igan ¹	# _____	Apikweshimon	# _____
Dikinaagan	# _____	Opwaagan	# _____
Waazakonenjigan	# _____	Waagaakwad	# _____
Jiishta'igan	# _____	Aabaabika'igan	# _____

Note:

1. This word can mean: book, textbook, notebook, bill, writing paper, newspaper, letter, etc. It really just means "anything on which something is written."
2. This word can mean "pen" or "pencil." It refers to almost any writing utensil.

Excercise J

For a final exercise in this lesson, review your new vocabulary and the words you already know by writing two mini-dialogues of no less than six lines each. Your instructor will help you to review pronunciation.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 2

Exercise A

Plural Pronouns

Listening and Understanding:

1. In Unit 1, Lesson 6, Exercise A, you learned the meaning of **niin**, **giin**, and **wiin**. These are all singular pronouns, because each one refers to only one person. Now you will look at the plural pronouns, each of which stands for more than one person.

niinawind	first person plural	we/us
giinawind	first person plural	we/us
giinawaa	second person plural	you
wiinawaa	third person plural	they/them

Note that Ojibwe has two ways of saying 'we' or 'us.' These will be discussed below.

2. Listen to and then practice saying these phrases until their meaning is clear to you, and you can pronounce them clearly. The English translations are on page 173.

In the second column in the box immediately below the word 'wiin' is often left out.

Eya, niinawind.	Niinawind dash (wiin).	Geniinawind.
Eya, giinawind.	Giinawind dash (wiin).	Gegiinawind.
Eya, giinawaa.	Giinawaa dash (wiin).	Gegiinawaa.
Eya, wiinawaa.	Wiinawaa dash (wiin).	Gewiinawaa.

Niinawind nitam.	Gaawiin niinawind.
Giinawind nitam.	Gaawiin giinawind.
Giinawaa nitam.	Gaawiin giinawaa.
Wiinawaa nitam.	Gaawiin wiinawaa.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 2

First Person Plural

The English word “we” can mean “you and I.” For example, if you call someone with whom you’re going on a trip, and say, “We’ll be leaving at six,” you are including the person you’re talking to in the “we” you use. This kind of “we” is expressed in examples like the following:

Gigiwemin	Kidaakozimin	Ginagamomin
Giwiisinimin	Gidoozhibii’igemin	Gibaapimin
Giboodawemin	Gimawimin	Gidanokiimin

This form of the verb is called the first person plural **INCLUSIVE**. It corresponds to the pronoun **giinawind** which we introduced above in 1. The important thing to remember about the inclusive is that the person doing the action or asking the question is **INCLUDED** among those that the verb or pronoun refers to. For example, if we ask the following question,

Aaniin endoodamang? What are we (inclusive) doing?

then we could answer with any of the inclusive verb forms above.

3. The English word “we” can also mean I and someone else (him/her/them), but not you. For example, if you call someone who is not going on the trip with you, you may say, “We will be leaving at six.” This “we” is different from the inclusive “we”, because that “we” **INCLUDES** the person you’re talking to, while the exclusive “we” **EXCLUDES** the person you’re talking to. This second kind of “we” is expressed in the following:

Niminikwemin	Niwii-wiisinimin	Nijiibaakwemin
Nidoozhibii’igemin	Nidebi-wiisinimin	Niboodawemin
Ningotaajimin	Ninibaamin	Nindanokiimin

This form of the verb is called the first person plural **EXCLUSIVE**. It corresponds to the pronoun **niinawind** which we introduced above in 1. The important thing to remember about the exclusive is that the person doing the action or asking the question is **EXCLUDED** from those that the verb or pronoun refers to. For example, if we ask the following question,

Aaniin endoodameg? What are you (plural) doing?

then we could answer with any of the exclusive verb forms above.

4. Since English speakers don’t make a distinction between the two meanings of “we” you will have to pay close attention to these ideas for a while, until they become automatic to you.

Take extra time to review these two kinds of “we.” Answer the following questions.

What part of both sets of words is the same? _____

What part is different between the first and second sets? _____

In which set of words are the speaker excluded? _____

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 2

Using What You Have Learned:

5. Ask questions and answers by using the question phrases “Aaniin endoodamang?” and “Aaniin endoodameg?” You can use the AI verbs below. Try these with a partner, and then write them down. The English translations are on page 174.

Wanishkaa	Nagamo
Maajaa	Biizhaa
Biindige	Gizhiwaazi
Boodawe	Niimi

6. Reply in full sentences to these questions: English translation on page 174.

Aaniin endoodaman?	(getting up)
Aaniin endoodamaan?	(crying)
Aaniin endoodang?	(drinking)
Aaniin endoodamowaad?	(dancing)
Aaniin endoodameg?	(making a fire)
Aaniin endoodamang?	(entering)
Aaniin waa-doodaman?	(working)
Aaniin waa-doodamaan?	(sleeping)
Aaniin waa-doodang?	(singing)
Aaniin waa-doodamowaad?	(eating)
Aaniin waa-doodameg?	(playing)
Aaniin waa-doodamang?	(going home)

Exercise B

Reading and Understanding:

1. Work in groups of three, being careful to look at the person you're talking to, and clearly understand these mini-dialogues, thinking about who you mean by “we” in each case. The English translations are on pages 174 and 175.

Gidanokiim ina noongom gaa-giizhigak?
Eya, nidanokiimin.

Giga-anokiimin ina noongom gaa-giizhigak?
Eya, giga-anohkiimin.

Giga-giiwem ina waabang?
Gaawiin, gaawiin ninga-giiwesiimin.

Giga-maajaamin ina waabang?
Gaawiin giga-maajaasiimin waabang.

Gigii-nagamom ina bijiinaago?
Eya, ningii-nagamomin.

Wiiba na giga-gijiibaakwemin?
Eya, wiiba giga-gijiibaakwemin.

Aazha na ginibaam?
Gaawiin mashi ninibaasiimin.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 2

2. Translate these sentences and reply in full sentences. The English translations are on page 175.

Giwii-wiisinim ina? _____

Giga-giwe na waabang? _____

Gigii-aakozim ina bijiinaago? _____

Giga-anokiimin ina awasiwaabang? _____

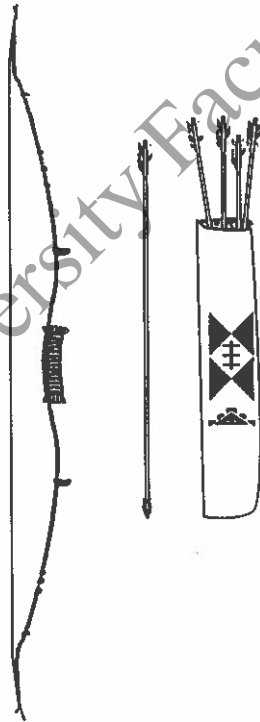
Aazha na wiiba giga-maajaamin? _____

Aazha na wii-nibaawak? _____

Aazha na gidebi-wiisin? _____

Waabang na giga-boodawemin gizhaabikiziganing? _____

3. For practice speaking, work with a partner using the questions and answers you just completed.

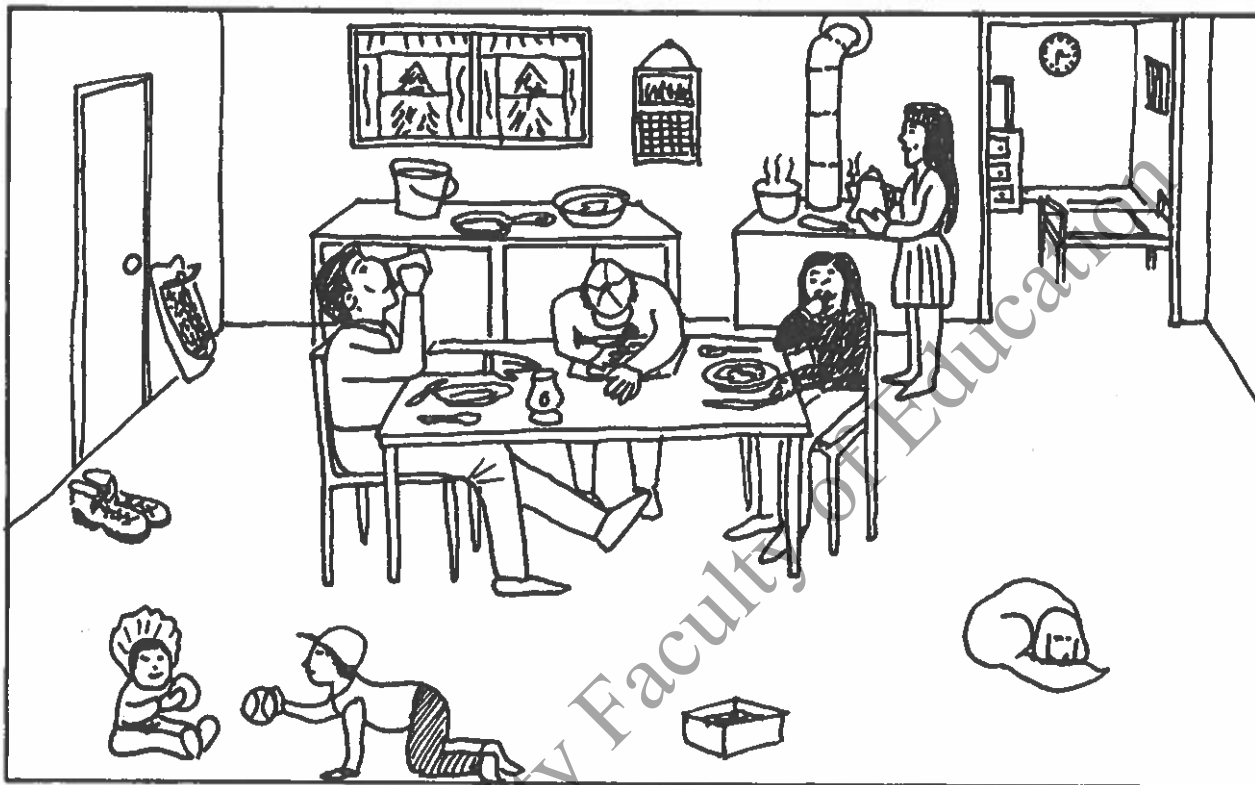


Mitigwaab miinawaa Bikwak

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 2

Exercise C

Let's Talk Around the Table



Reply to these questions in full sentences by using locative endings and location words. The first one is done for you. The English translations are on page 175.

Aandi giizisoo-mazina'igan? ____ Jiigi-waasechiganing.

Aandi diba'igiiziswaan? _____

Aandi animosh? _____

Aandi waazakonenjigan? _____

Aandi dikinaagan? _____

Aandi mazina'igan? _____

Aandi waakaa'igan? _____

Aandi waagaakwad? _____

Practice Speaking:

Study this picture, and see how many things and events you can see. For example, you could:

- Ask and answer questions about the naming of articles.
- Ask and answer questions about the naming of people.
- Ask and answer questions about the locations of things.
- Ask and answer questions about the activities or people.
- Repeating the same questions and answers by using past and future tenses.
- Make plural forms of the articles.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 2

Exercise D

Read and Understand:

1. Your instructor will ask you the following questions about the picture. Try not to look at the questions; just listen to what your instructor says and answer each question with either **debwe** or **gaawiin**. The English translations are on page 175.

- a. Aazha nibaa animosh.
- b. Diba'igiiziswaan adoopowining abi.
- c. Mawiwag abinoojiinyag.
- d. Aazha jiibaakwe ikwe gizhaabikiziganing.
- e. Waazakonenjigan adoopowining.
- f. Aazha minikwe inini.
- g. Aazha boodawe ikwezens.
- h. Dikinaagan ishkwaandeming.
- i. Aazha ozhibii'ige gwiiwizens.
- j. Giizisoo-masina'igan ate apabiwining.
- k. Makizinan atewan ishkwaandeming.
- l. Baapi ikwe.
- m. Nagamo animosh.
- n. Inini, gwiiwizens miina ikwezens wiisiniwag adoopowining.
- o. Bine waasechiganing.
- p. Boodawewag abinoojiinyag.

Notes: In sentence (b) above, *abi* means 'to be (sitting) there' (something animate); in sentence (j) above *ate* means 'to be there' (something inanimate); in sentence (k) above *atewan* means 'to be there' (several inanimate things).

Dialogues:

2. Listen to these dialogues carefully in class, then practice them with your partner. The English translations are on page 176.

- A. 1 - Aandi animosh?
2 - I'iwedi naaniya'ii babagiwayaanegamigong.
1 - Aaniin endoodang?
2 - Wiisini.
1 - Giin dash wiin? Aaniin endoodaman?
2 - Geniin niwii-wiisin.
1 - Gaawiin niin niwii-wiisinisiin.
Niwii-maajaa.

- B. 1 - Aaniin waa-doodaman?
2 - Biizh bakwezhiganikaan miina waawanoon!
Gegiin na giwii-wiisin?
1 - Gaawiin, niwii-anokii.
2 - Aandi?
1 - Waasa noopiming.
Gegiin na?
2 - Gaawiin, niwii-nibaa.

C. Knock! Knock!

- 1 - Awenen awe?
2 - Niin (oh)sha John.
1 - Ahaaw biindigen! Abin o'omaa!
Giwii-minikwe na nitii?
2 - Gaawiin, nibi eta.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 2

- D. 1 - Aaniin endoodang ikwe?
2 - Boodawe gizhaabikiziganing.
Wii-jiibaakwe.
1 - Aazha na gii-wiisiniwag gwiiwizensag?
2 - Gaawiin. Geshdine wii-wiisiniwag.
1 - Giin dash wiin. Gegiin na giwii-wiisin?
2 - Gaawiin. Aazha niin nigii-wiisin.
Geshdine niwii-anokii.
- E. 1 - Aaniin waa-doodameg noongom gaa-giizhigak?
2 - Niwii-ozhibii'igemin.
1 - Geniinawind.
2 - Aandi ozhibii'iganaakoog?
1 - Wedi jiigiya'ii mazina'iganing.
2 - Daga biizh omaa.
1 - Gegiin omaa namadabin!
2 - Atoon gimazina'iganan omaa!

Practice writing: The English translations are on pages 176 and 177.

3. Write full answers to these questions about the picture at the beginning of this lesson.

Aaniin endoodamowaad abinoojiyag? _____
Aandi diba'igiiziswaan? _____
Aaniin endoodang ikwe? _____
Wiisiniwag ina inini gaye gwiiwizens? _____
Aandi makizinan? _____
Aazha na gii-boodawe ikwe? _____
Wiiba na da-debiisiniwag ikwezensag? _____
Aandi waazakonenjigan? _____
Aaniin endoodang gwiiwizens? _____
Aaniin endoodang animosh? _____

4. Answer these questions from your own experience.

Aaniin endoodaman noongom? _____
Aaniin ezhinikaazoyan? _____
Aandi wenjiiyan? _____
Giwii-wiisin ina? _____
Giwii-nagam ina? _____
Giwii-nibaam ina? _____
Gigii-aakozim ina awasinaago? _____
Aaniin endoodameg noongom gaa-giizhigak? _____
Giga-maajaam ina awasiwaabang? _____
Giboodawem ina? _____

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 2

5. Complete each of these phrases with a suitable word.

- A. Wewiib! Bakite'o _____!
- B. Biidoon zhiiwitaagan gaye _____.
- C. Wewiib biizhaan bi-_____!
- D. Gegiin ina _____?
- E. Atoon mazina'igan _____.
- F. Waabang giga-_____.
- G. _____ noongom gaa-giizhigak?
- H. (N)indanokii. _____?
- I. Gigiiwe na _____?
- J. _____ da-maajaawag.
- K. Giinawaa _____ wiin?
- L. Gegiinawind _____ waabang.
- M. Animosh dash _____? Gewiin na _____?
- N. _____ (n)indizhinikaaz.
- O. _____ ezhinikaazoyan?
- P. Baapiwag _____.
- Q. Da-nagamo _____.
- R. _____ niwii-nibaa.
- S. Debwe _____?
- T. _____ gii-gotaajiwag.

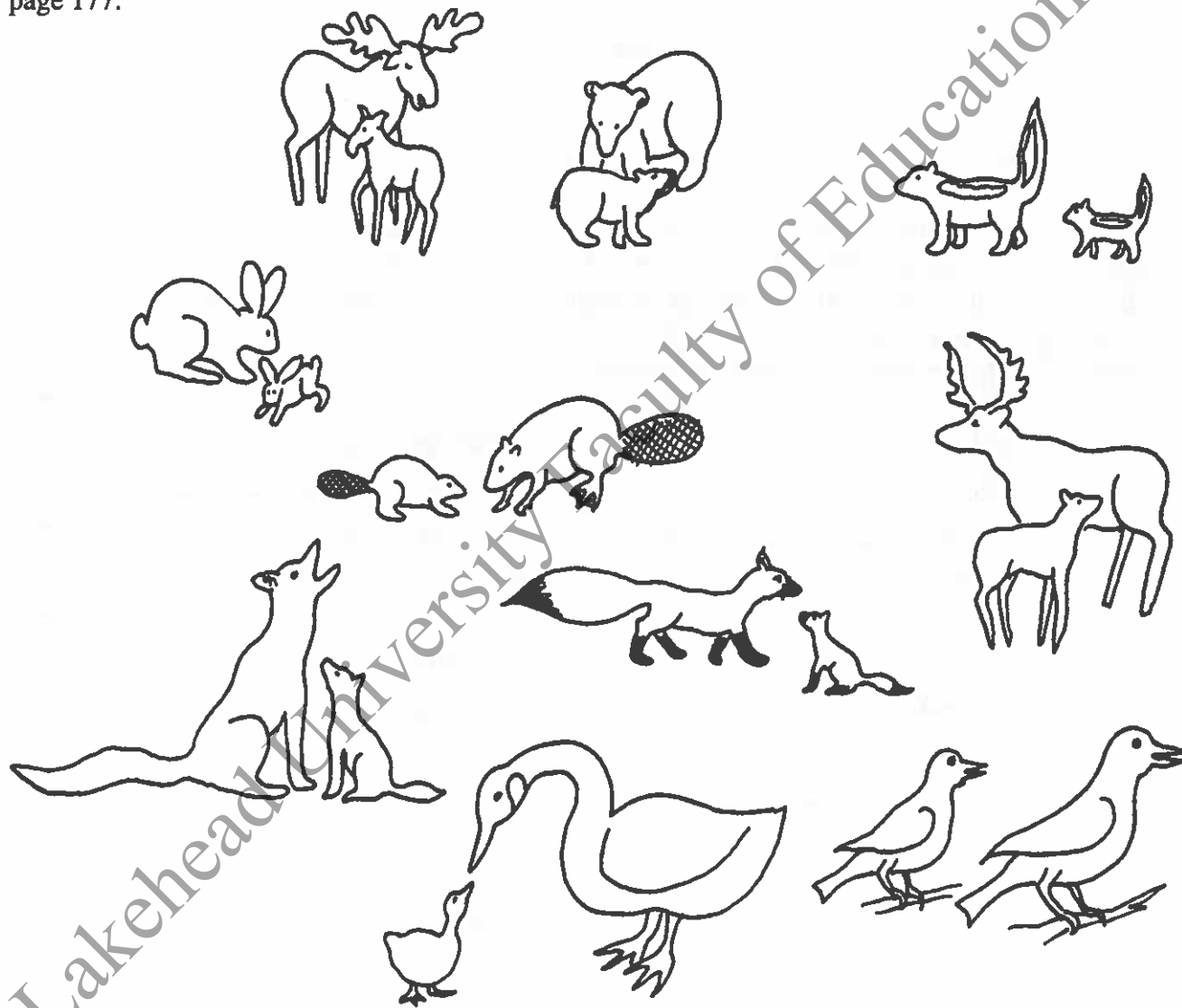
INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 2

Exercise E

Noopiming

Diminutives:

1. Listen to the names of the animals listed below and watch as your instructor points to them. When you think you can identify them yourself, try doing so, imitating Ojibwe pronunciation carefully. Next, write the correct identifying number beside each picture. English translations on page 177.



1. zhigaag

2. zhigaagoons

3. mooz

4. moozoons

5. makwa

6. makoons

7. waabooz

8. waaboozoons

9. amik

10. amikoons

11. adik

12. adikoons

13. nika

14. nikens

15. bineshii

16. bineshiyens

17. ma'iingan

18. ma'iinganens

19. waagosh

20. waagoshens

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 2

2. How does an Ojibwe speaker indicate a “small” (young) animal? When the ending (ns) is used to indicate smallness, the form is called a DIMINUTIVE. Diminutive forms can be made from animate and inanimate nouns. Listen, for example, to these: English translation on page 177.

apabiwin
apabiwinens

emikwaan
emikwaanens¹

bakwezhiganikaan
bakwezhiganikaanens

mazina'igan
mazina'iganens

onaagan
onaagaans

giigoo
giigoons

animosh
animoons

waasechigan
waasechiganens

dikinaagan
dikinaaganens

3. You may find that the form of the diminutive suffix changes slightly when you add it to different nouns. Look at the diminutive forms above and see if you can spot the differences we are talking about. Can you see a pattern which predicts when the forms are different? For the following list of nouns, write the diminutive form beside each one. Check your answers with the instructor if you need help. The English translations are on page 178.

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------------|
| a. zhigaag = _____ | m. badaka'igan = _____ |
| b. amik = _____ | n. makwa = _____ |
| c. bimide = _____ | o. mookomaan = _____ |
| d. mooz = _____ | p. minikwaajigan = _____ |
| e. adik = _____ | q. waabooz = _____ |
| f. akik = _____ | r. waasechigan = _____ |
| g. jiimaan = _____ | s. zhiiwitaagan = _____ |
| h. nika = _____ | t. apabiwin = _____ |
| i. onaagan = _____ | u. zhiishiib = _____ |
| j. nibaagan = _____ | v. ma'iingan = _____ |
| k. giigoo = _____ | w. dikinaagan = _____ |
| l. animosh = _____ | x. waazakonenjigan = _____ |

¹ The word **emikwaan** is the general word for ‘spoon,’ while the diminutive form **emikwaanens** is used specifically to refer to ‘teaspoon.’

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 2

4. In this exercise, put the diminutive nouns from part 3 above into the proper columns.

Animate Nouns	Inanimate Nouns
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	
11	
12	



Memengwe
(butterfly)

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 2

5. Diminutives are used in Ojibwe to refer to small and young animals. Fill in the missing letters and then write the correct diminutive form as shown in the example. Go back to page 101 for spelling corrections.

1. bineshii

2. bineshiivens



5. amik

6. _____



9. waa _ _ _ h

10. _____



13. mak _ _

14. _____



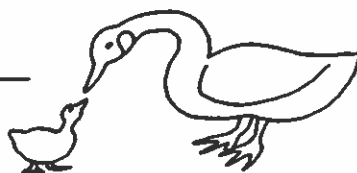
17. zh _ _ sh _ _ b

18. _____



3. n _ ka

4. _____



7. _ d _ k

8. _____



11. _ _ 'iin _ _ _

12. _____



15. _ _ _ gaag

16. _____



19. _ _ _ booz

20. _____



21. _ _ _ _

22. _____



INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 2

Exercise F

Introduction to Transitive Verbs

1. Listen to understand, and then pronounce the following sentences. In each sentence the verb means "see": English translations on page 178 for sections 1 to 5.

Niwaabamaa mooz.	Niwaabandaan dikinaagan.
Giwaabamaa na nika?	Giwaabandaan ina wiiwakwaan?
Makoons niwaabamaa.	Apabiwinens niwaabandaan.
Giwaabamaa na waabooz?	Giwaabandaan ina adiko-wiyyaas?
Niwaabamaa amik.	Niwaabandaan mazina'igan.

2. Now, with a partner, turn back to the picture of the animals at the beginning of this lesson, and put each of the animal names in one of the sentences: "I see _____" or "Do you see _____?" Experiment with a variety of word orders, as the sentences above illustrate.

It is also possible to simply say "Niwaabamaa" or "Niwaabandaan" without any other words to form a complete sentence. In this case, you would mean, "I see him" or "I see it."

3. Did you notice in section 1 that the Ojibwe word for "see" was written in two different ways? How do you account for this difference?

"Niwaabamaa" and "Giwaabamaa" are _____ forms.

"Niwaabandaan" and "Giwaabandaan" are _____ forms.

4. Now look at these sentences. In each case below, the verb means "eat".

(N)indamwaa waabooz	Nimijjin wiyyaas.
Gidamwaa na makwa?	Gimijjin ina bagishkiboojiganaaboo?
Giigoo (n)indamwaa.	Opin nimijjin.
Adik ina gidamwaa?	Bimide na gimijjin?

You now know three Ojibwe words for "eat". How are they different?

1. niwiisin
2. (n)indamwaa
3. nimijjin

5. Using the verbs niwaabamaa, niwaabandaan, (n)indamwaa and nimijjin, go back over all the nouns you have learned so far in the course, and, using one of these four verbs, put each into at least one sentence. If you can make more than one, do so. Use your file cards for this, supplemented with the list of animal names from Exercise E of this lesson.

Now go through your noun list again, asking the following questions of each noun:

1. Giwaabamaa na?
or
Giwaabandaan ina?
2. Gidamwaa na?
or
Gimijjin ina?

In both 1 and 2 use whichever form is appropriate for the noun in question.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 2

Thinking about verb types:

6. In the chart below, you'll notice that all three of the sentences have subjects and verbs, but that only two of the sentences have objects.

<u>Subject</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>Object</u>
I	eat.	
I	eat	fish.
I	eat	meat.

- Verbs that take an object are called **TRANSITIVE VERBS**.
- Verbs that do not take an object are called **INTRANSITIVE VERBS**.

When we talk about subjects and objects, what do we mean? Roughly, the **SUBJECT** of a sentence is the person or thing that is doing the action, or in some cases, the person or thing that is being described. The **OBJECT** is the person or thing that the action is being done to, or in some way is affected by the verb. If you look at the English translations in the box above, you can see how these rough definitions apply.

Which of the following verbs are transitive and which are intransitive? Put a 'T' beside the transitive one and an 'I' beside the intransitive ones.

niwiisin	(n)indamwaa	nimiijin
niwaabamaa	niwaabandaan	(n)indanokii
biizh	biidoon	namadabin

Notice that on each line above there are two transitive verbs but only one intransitive verb. What is the difference between the two transitive verbs in each case (look back to section 3)?

Some transitive verbs take an **ANIMATE** object. These are called **TRANSITIVE ANIMATE** verbs or (VTA) for short. Other transitive verbs take an **INANIMATE** object. These are called **TRANSITIVE INANIMATE** or (VTI) for short. From now on, when we need to talk about verb types, we'll use the short forms: VTA and VTI verbs.

Now you should be able to fill in this chart, using the nine verbs from above:

<u>Intransitive Verbs</u>	<u>VTA Verbs</u>	<u>VTI Verbs</u>

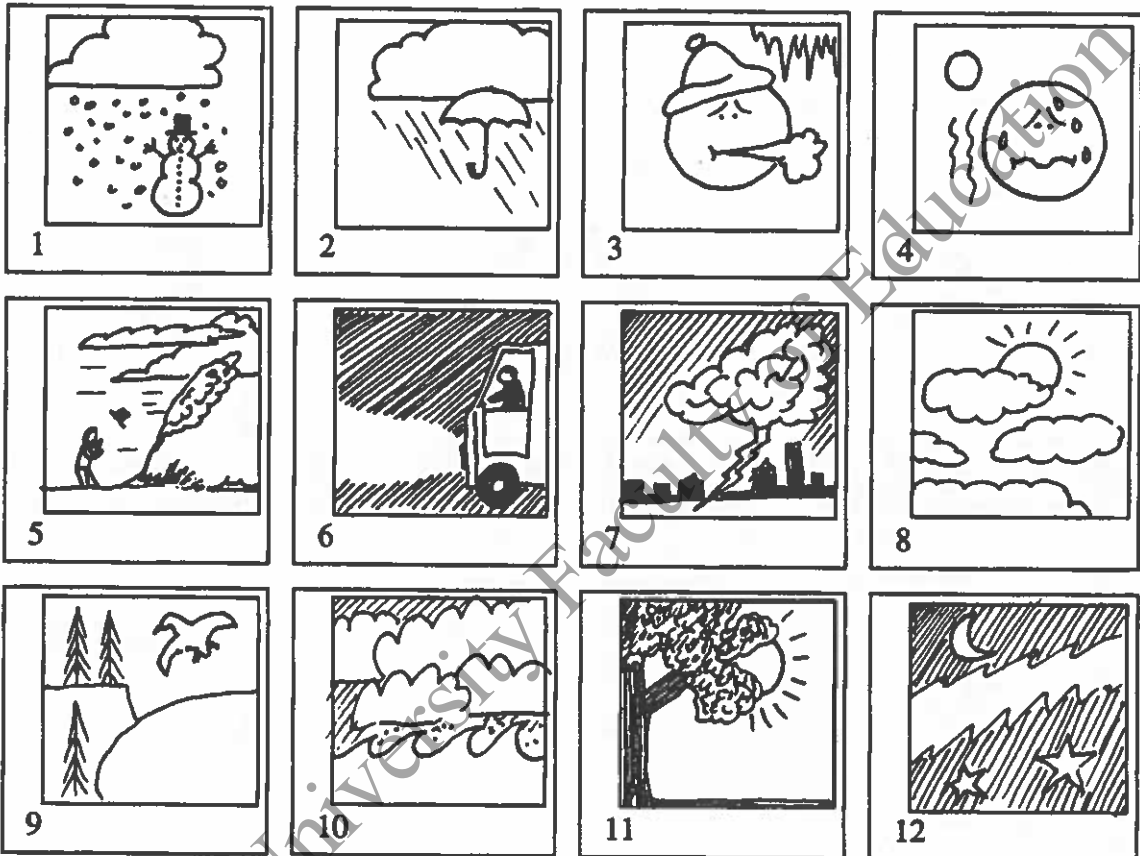
INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 2

Exercise G

New Vocabulary (VII)

1. Listen carefully as your instructor says the words that correspond to each of the following pictures.

Aaniin ezhiwebak? / How is the Weather?



Write the number which corresponds to each picture. English translations on page 179.

Noodin	# _____	Zaagaate	# _____	Awan ¹	# _____
Dakaayaa	# _____	Gimiwan	# _____	Anwaatin	# _____
Gizhide	# _____	Animikiikaa	# _____	Maazhi-giizhigad ²	# _____
Zoogipon	# _____	Waawaate	# _____	Ningwakwad ³	# _____

2. Learn this vocabulary in the usual way: Listen, then pronounce the words, then in your notebook make up a little sentence for each of the words. Be creative when writing sentences. For example: "Naanda da-dakaayaa waabang." "Gii-awan bijiinaago."

1 The word **gashkawan** is often used with the same meaning.

2 This word is used to mean 'it is an unpleasant day, the weather is bad.' The word **baabiidaanakwad** 'there are clouds coming' is often used to suggest a similar meaning, 'be cloudy.'

3 The word **ningwaanakwad** has a similar meaning.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 2

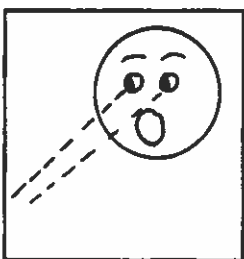
Exercise H

Working with the Language:

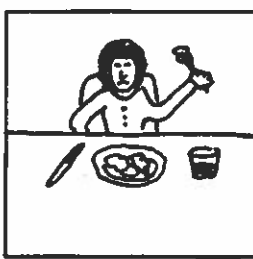
1. Say these words and sentences in the Native language.

- a little canoe, a small house, a baby partridge.
- far away in the bush, the dog is under the table.
- by the tipi, a moose is in the bush, it was hot yesterday.
- maybe it will rain tomorrow, it was snowing yesterday.
- today is windy, today is a sunny day.

2. Some More Transitive Verbs: The English translations are on page 179.



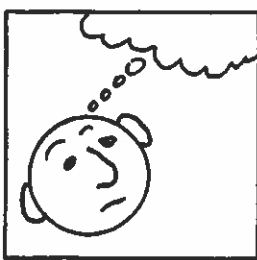
niwaabamaa (VTA)
niwaabandaan (VTI)



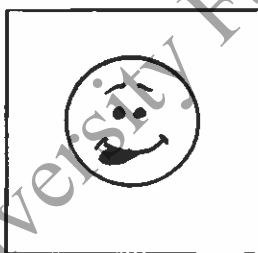
(n)indamwaa (VTA)
nimiijin (VTI)



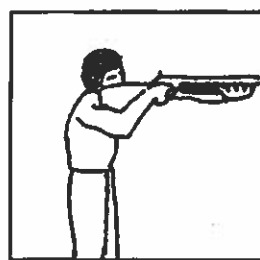
nidandawaabamaa (VTA)
nidandawaabandaan (VTI)



nimaaminonenimaa (VTA)
nimaaminonendaan (VTI)



niminopwaa (VTA)
niminopodaan (VTI)



ninisaa (VTA)
ninitoon (VTI)

3. With which picture does each of the following words go?

look for, see, like the taste of, eat, kill, think

Some Useful Expressions

Wegonen?

Wegonen endawendaman?

Aaniish?

Aaniin danaa?

Aaniish wiin danaa?

Aaniish wiin?

Aandi ezhaayan?

Aandi ezhaayeg?

Aaniin ezhiwebak?

Aaniin enakamigak?

Aapiji.

What?

What do you want?

What about? or what for?

Why not?

Why is it not so?

Why, how come?

Where are you (singular) going?

Where are you (plural) going?

How's the weather?

What's going on?

Very, quite

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 2

Reading and understanding exercise:

4. Read these dialogues carefully and make sure you understand them. Work with a partner for practice speaking.

- A. 1 - Aandi ezhaayan?
2 - Nigiawe
1 - Aaniish?
2 - (N)indaakoz.
- B. 1 - Wagonen andawendaman?
2 - Gaawin gegoon nidandawendanzin.
1 - Aaniish dash?
2 - Niwii-nibaa.
- C. 1 - Giwii-nibaa na?
2 - Gaawin.
1 - Aaniish wiin dash?
2 - Nimaaminonenimaa (n)indinawemaagan.
- D. 1 - Aan ezhiwebak agwajiing?
2 - Zoogipon.
1 - Giwii-odamin ina agwajiing?
2 - Gaawin, niwii-nibaa.
- E. 1 - Aandi ezhaayeg?
2 - Nigiawemin.
1 - Aaniish wiin?
2 - Niwii-wiisinimin gaye aapiji niwii-nibaamin.
- F. 1 - Na! Aazha zoogipon!
2 - Giwii-odamin ina agwajiing?
1 - Gaawin, nimaajaa.
2 - Oonh! Aandi ezhaayan?
1 - Waasa noopiming. Niwii-andawaabamaa waabooz.
2 - Giggii-waabamaa dash waabooz bijiinaago?
1 - Eya, bezhig eta nigii-waabamaa.
- G. 1 - Giggii-waabamaa na mooz awasinaago?
2 - Eya, nigii-waabamaa.
1 - Aandi?
2 - Iwidi besho noopiming.
1 - Giggii-nisaa na mooz?
2 - Eya, giggii-minopwaa na mooz?
1 - Miinawaa ikidon!
2 - Giminopodaan ina moozo-wiiaas?
1 - Eya, aapiji niminopodaan.

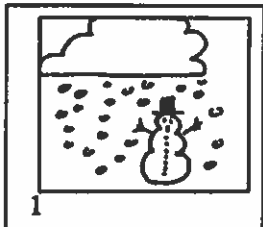
Exercise I

In this exercise, write two mini-dialogues of no less than eight lines each. After you have done that, practice speaking using these mini-dialogues. You can also work with the dialogues from Exercise H - 4 (A-G) and the expressions from Exercise H - 3.

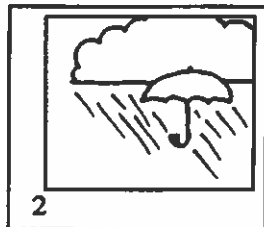
INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 2

Exercise J

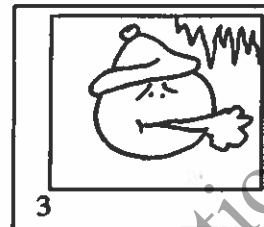
Write sentences in Ojibwe using the Present, Past and Future tenses.



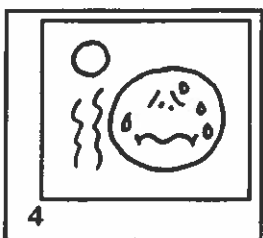
1. _____
2. _____
3. _____



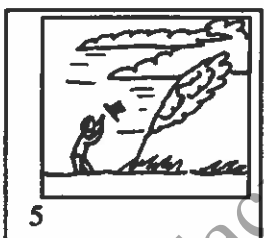
1. _____
2. _____
3. _____



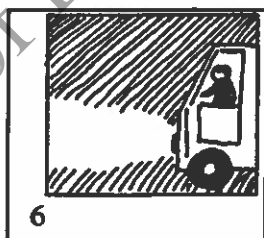
1. _____
2. _____
3. _____



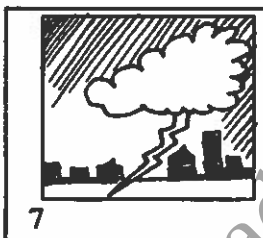
1. _____
2. _____
3. _____



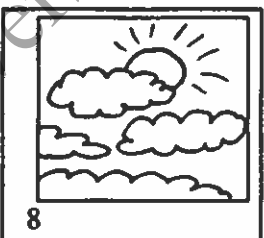
1. _____
2. _____
3. _____



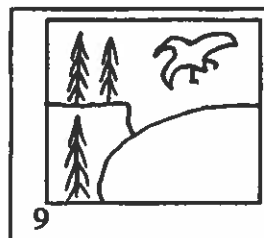
1. _____
2. _____
3. _____



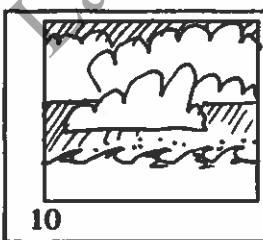
1. _____
2. _____
3. _____



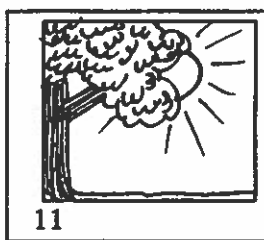
1. _____
2. _____
3. _____



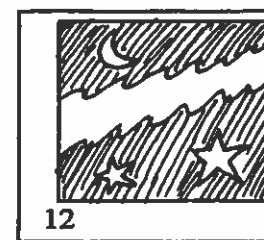
1. _____
2. _____
3. _____



1. _____
2. _____
3. _____



1. _____
2. _____
3. _____



1. _____
2. _____
3. _____

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 2

Exercise K

Translate the following sentences into Ojibwe.

1. I see the bear cub.

2. I am looking for the skunk.

3. I am eating one potato.

4. I will kill a moose tomorrow.

5. I am thinking about a small canoe.

6. I like the taste of bannock.

7. I saw a pipe the day before yesterday.

8. I am eating bread.

9. I am looking for a small plate.

10. I saw a small house yesterday.

11. I am thinking about the small bed.

12. I like the taste of moose-meat.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 3

Exercise A

Introduction to the Obviative

1. Listen to and imitate these sets of sentences: Translations are on page 180.

(N)indamwaa giigoo.
Gidamwaa giigoo.
Odamwaan giigooyan.

Nimiijin wiiyaas.
Gimiijin wiiyaas.
Omiijin wiiyaas.

Niwaabamaa zhigaag.
Giwaabamaa zhigaag.
Owaabamaan zhigaagoon.

Niwaabandaan waakaa'igan.
Giwaabandaan waakaa'igan.
Owaabandaan waakaa'igan.

Look carefully at the objects of each sentence. Do you notice anything different about some of these sentences?

Look back to Unit 1, Lesson 5, Exercise G, if you need a reminder about what we mean when we say "first", "second", and "third" person. It's in sentences with _____ person subjects that you may have noticed an extra ending on the noun object. Nouns having this form are called OBVIATIVES. Can you make a rule about when you can expect to find obviative nouns?

2. It is common in paradigm work to use numbers for the different persons to help in an orderly arrangement and identification of your work. The following numbers are used in studying and describing Anishinaabemowin paradigms:

1	First Person	13	First Person Exclusive
2	Second Person	21	First Person Inclusive
3	Third Person	22	Second Person Plural
		33	Third Person Plural

Think about why the numbers 13 and 21 are used for the first person exclusive and inclusive. The order in which these numbers occur is also important. Notice that singular forms always come before the plural forms and that the numerical order is 1, 2, 3. The translations are on page 180.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 3

TA Verbs

(N)indamwaa nika.
Gidamwaa nika.
Odamwaan nikan.

(N)indamwaanaan nika.
Gidamwaanaan nika.
Gidamwaam nika.
Odamwaawaan nikan.

Niwaabamaa waagosh.
Gowaabamaa waagosh.
Owaabamaan waagoshan.

Niwaabamaanaan waagosh.
Giwaabamaanaan waagosh.
Giwaabamaam waagosh.
Owaabamaawaan waagoshan.

TI Verbs

Nimiijin bimide.
Gimiijin bimide.
Omiijin bimide.

Nimiijimin bimide.
Gimiijimin bimide.
Gimiijinaawaa bimide.
Omiijinaawaa bimide.

Niwaabandaan baashkizigan.
Giwaabandaan baashkizigan.
Owaabandaan baashkizigan.

Niwaabandaamin baashkizigan.
Giwaabandaamin baashkizigan.
Giwaabandaanaawaa baashkizigan.
Owaabandaanaawaa baashkizigan.

Write out and practice reading aloud full paradigms for these verbs. Use the paradigms in Section 2 if you have forgotten anything.

TA Verbs

1 Ninisaa waagosh.

2 _____

3 _____

13 _____

21 _____

22 _____

33 _____

TI Verbs

Niwaabandaan waakaa'igan.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 3

Forming the Obviative:

You may have noticed that only animate nouns have an obviative form. If you are familiar with other dialects you may find that some of them have obviative forms for inanimate nouns, but for the variety of Anishinaabemowin that we are learning you only need to learn the obviative forms of animate nouns.

Making the obviative form of an animate noun is simple if you know the plural. Simply change the final **g** of the plural to **n**, and you have the obviative form.

Change	makwag	to	makwan
	waagoshag	to	waagoshan

3. Check the rule you made in Section 1, above, to see if it works all through the paradigm. If not, adjust your rule to fit what's really happening.

Does your rule apply to: animate nouns only?

Working with the Language:

4. In groups of three using all your new VTA and VTI verbs, each person take a turn asking to the other two:

- (a) Do you (plural) like the taste of _____?

Answer: Yes, we like the taste of him/it.

Are we (inclusive) looking for _____?

Answer: Yes, we're looking for him/it.

- (b) Using as many different animals as possible, work with your partner asking and answering questions:

Do you (singular) see _____? Yes, I see _____.

Does he see _____? Yes, he sees _____.

Be certain in this exercise to use the obviative form when it's needed.

- (c) Using as many different things that you can eat as possible, work with your partner asking:

Are you (singular) eating _____? Yes, I _____.

Is he/she eating _____? Yes he/she _____.

Be certain in this exercise to use the obviative form when necessary.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 3

(d) Make up several little two or three line dialogues with this pattern:

Niga-nandawaabamaa waabooz waabang.
Gegiin na giwii-biizhaa?
Gaawiin, niwii-nibaa.

Exercise B

More About Verb Types

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| 1. a. (N)andawenjige | He hunts. |
| b. Maajiibizo | He sets out by vehicle. |
| c. Dagoshin | He arrives. |
| d. Dagoshinoomagad | It arrives. |
| e. Niwiji'aa | I am helping him. |
| f. Niwijitoon | I am helping it. |
| g. Niwijiiwaa | I am going with him/her. |
| h. Nigiizhizwaa | I cook it (animate). |
| i. Nigiizhizaan | I cook it (inanimate). |
| j. Nidandawenimaa | I need him/she, want him/she. |
| k. Nidandawendan | I need it, want it. |
| l. Nimiinaa | I give to him (VTA). |
| m. Nibiina'waa | I put him in (a container/packsack); I pack him. |
| n. Nibiina'aan | I put it in (a container/packsack); I pack it. |
| o. Ma! | Listen! |
| p. Awiiya | Someone, person. |

2. Reading and Understanding Exercise:

- Andawenjige John. Owii-nisaan moozoon.
- Maajiibizo Mary. Giwe.
- Mary waabang da-dagoshin. Da-anokii.
- Da-dagoshinoomagad ombaasin awasiwaabang.
- Niwiji'aa (n)indinawemaagan noongom gaa-giizhigak.
- Niwijitoon anokiiwin.
- Niga-wijiiwaa (n)indinawemaagan noongom gaa-giizhigak.
- Nigiizhizwaa giigoo.
- Nigiizhizaan wiyaas.
- Ninandawenimaa niwijiiwaagan.
- Ninandawendaan jiimaan.
- Nimiinaa minikwaajigan.
- Nibiina'waa waabooz.
- Nibiina'aan waabowayaan.
- Ma! Aazha ombaasin dagoshinoomagad.
- Na! Awiiya bi-naagozi.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 3

3. Read these dialogues carefully. Pay attention to proper pronunciation. Check with your instructor if you need help understanding any of the sentences. Translations on page 181.

A. 1 - Aandi waa-izhaayeg noongom gaa-giizhigak?

2 - Noopiming niwii-izhaamin.

1 - Aaniinpii waa-maajaayeg?

2 - Geshtine niwii-maajaamin.

1 - Aaniin waa-doodameg wedi?

2 - Niwii-nandawenjigemin eta.

1 - Maagizhaa mooz giga-nisaawaa.

2 - Ambegish.

B. 1 - Ma! Aazha awiia dagoshin.

2 - Aandi?

1 - Agwajiing ishkwaandeming.

2 - Wegonen dash, gigotaaj ina?

1 - Eya, nigotaaj. Wewiib biidoon nibaashkizigan!

2 - Gaawiin! Gaawiin niin nigotaajisii.

1 - Daga inaabin agwajiing!

2 - Ahaaw.

1 - Awiiya na giwaabamaa?

2 - Gaawiin. Animosh eta niwaabamaa.

4. Write your own two mini-dialogues. Then get someone to work with you for practice speaking, using those dialogues above plus your own.

Exercise C

Introduction to Possession

1. Listen, understand and repeat these words:

nibaashkizigan

gibaashkizigan

obaashkizigan

nijiimaan

gijiimaan

ojiimaan

nibakwezhiganikaan

gibakwezhiganikaan

obakwezhiganikaan

nindemikwaan

gidemikwaan

odemikwaan

niwaakaa'igan

giwaakaa'igan

owaakaa'igan

nigiigoom

gigiigoom

ogiigooman

nimookomaan

gimookomaan

omoolomaan

nidoonaagan

gidoonaagan

odoonaagan

nibabagiwayaanegamig

gibabagiwayaanegamig

obababiwayaanegamig

nibinem

gibinem

obineman

ninitiiwakik

ginitiiwakik

onitiiwakikoon

nidoodooshaaboom

gidoodooshaaboom

odoodooshaaboom

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 3

2. Observations:

- What prefix means "my"?
- What prefix means "yours"?
- What prefix means "his"?
- What suffix do you find on third person forms?
- Why is there a (d) in gi(d)emihkwaan?

3. In this exercise, translate the following words in the Native language: Check with your instructor for your corrections.

My chair
Your pencil
His tea

My egg
My door
His bread

My clock
Your kettle
His cup

My fork
Your knife
His bannock

4. An exception. There is a special way to say "dog" (animosh) when it is possessed:

(n)inday	"my dog"
giday	"your dog"
odayan	"his dog"

5. Listen, understand and repeat:

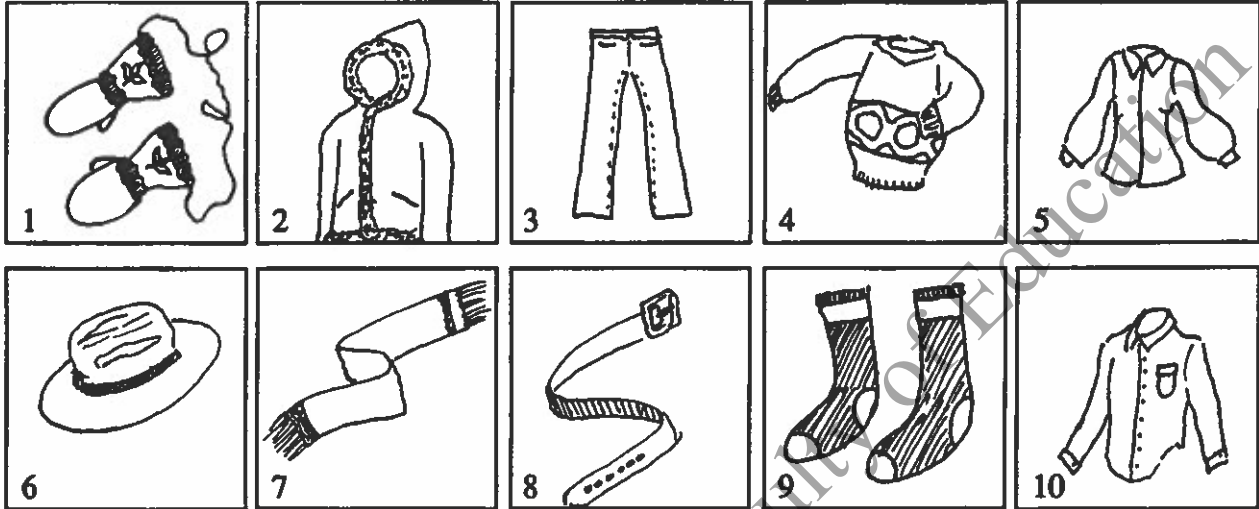
Aandi nibagishkiboojiganaaboom?
Onandawendaan nibaashkizigan.
Aaniin ezhinikaazod giday?
Biidoon giwaagaakwad!
Giwaabandaan ina John owaakaa'igan?
Aandi gidoozhii'iganaak?
Nigii-miinaa obneman.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 3

Exercise D

New Vocabulary

Listen carefully as your instructor pronounces the names of the nouns pictured here. After you have heard each word several times, match the pictures to the written words below: Translations and answers on page 182.



#___ giishkijiiwayaan¹ #___ giizhoopizon #___ minjikaawanag⁴
 #___ babiinskawaagan² #___ azhiganag³ #___ giboodiyegwaazon
 #___ wiiwakwaan #___ babagiwayaan #___ gijipizon #___ bikwan

In this exercise, write the three possessive forms for each of the nouns. The first set is done for you.

my = niminijikaawan
 your = giminjikaawan
 his/hers = ominjikaawanan

my = _____
 your = _____
 his/hers = _____

my = _____
 your = _____
 his/hers = _____

my = _____
 your = _____
 his/hers = _____

my = _____
 your = _____
 his/hers = _____

my = _____
 your = _____
 his/hers = _____

my = _____
 your = _____
 his/hers = _____

my = _____
 your = _____
 his/hers = _____

my = _____
 your = _____
 his/hers = _____

my = _____
 your = _____
 his/hers = _____

1 The word **nasweta** is also used for 'sweater.'

2 When this word is used without a personal (possessive) prefix the first syllable *ba-* is dropped, and the word is pronounced *biiskawaagan*. When a personal prefix is used, the first syllable is retained: *nibabiiskawaagan* 'my coat.'

3, 4 The singular form of **azhiganag** is **azhigan**; the singular form of **minjikaawanag** is **minjikaawan**.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 3

Exercise E

Understanding Different Classes of Words

1. This exercise is to give practice identifying the different types of words (nouns, verbs, and particles). Underline each word and then write its abbreviation underneath. The first sentence has been done for you.

A. Animosh! Nidandawendaan nimakizin! Wewiib biidoon!

Na VTI Ni PC VTI

B. Giwii-wiijiiwaa na Peter? Onandawaabamaan adikoon.

C. Ogii-nandawendaan mookomaan, ngii-miinaa dash.

D. Gaawiin owiiji'aasiin ikwezens ikwewan. Aazha nibaa.

E. Niga-wiiji'aa gwiiwizens waabang. Gaye awasiwaabang.

F. Gaawiin ogii-waabamaasiin moozoon. Ininiwan eta ogii-waabamaan.

G. Gidandawaabandaanaawaa ina jiimaan?

H. Giwii-miijinaawaa na moozo-wiiaas? Gaawiin, zhigaag niwii-amwaanaan.

I. Makoons ogii-waabamaan zhigaagoon. Gii-gotaaji!

J. (N)inday ogii-amwaan waaboozoon.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 3

Exercise F

Reading and Understanding:

1. Answer these questions with full sentences using both positive and negative responses. The English translations are on page 182.

- A. Gigii-wiiji'aawaa ina inini?
Gii-andawenjigewag ina?
Ogii-waabamaan ina waagosh binewan?
Aandi ombaasin?
Giminopwaawaa ina bakwezhiganikaan?
Giwii-wiijiwaawaa ina Frank?
Gigii-miinaa na moozo-wiiaas?

Listen as your instructor reads the dialogues in B and C below. Then work with your partner to practice them.

- B. 1 - Aan ge-doodang waabang? or (with obviative "waabaninig")
2 - Wii-maajaa waabaninig. Aazha ozhiitaa.
1 - Aandi waa-izhaad?
2 - Waasa noopiming.
1 - Giga-wiijiwaa na?
2 - Eya, niga-wiijiwaa iidog.
1 - Gegiin ina giwii-biizhaa?
2 - Gaawiin.

- C. 1 - Aandi Henry?
2 - Aazha gii-maajaa.
1 - Aaniinpii?
2 - Awasinaago.
1 - Aandi gaa-izhaad?
2 - Babaa-andawenjige noopiming¹.
1 - Bezhigo na?
2 - Gaawiin. Odayan owiijiwaan.
1 - Gwiiwizens dash wiin? Gewiin ina maajaa?
2 - Gaawiin. Geyaabi nibaa.

- D. Write two of your own mini-dialogues containing obviative endings. Practice these with your partner.

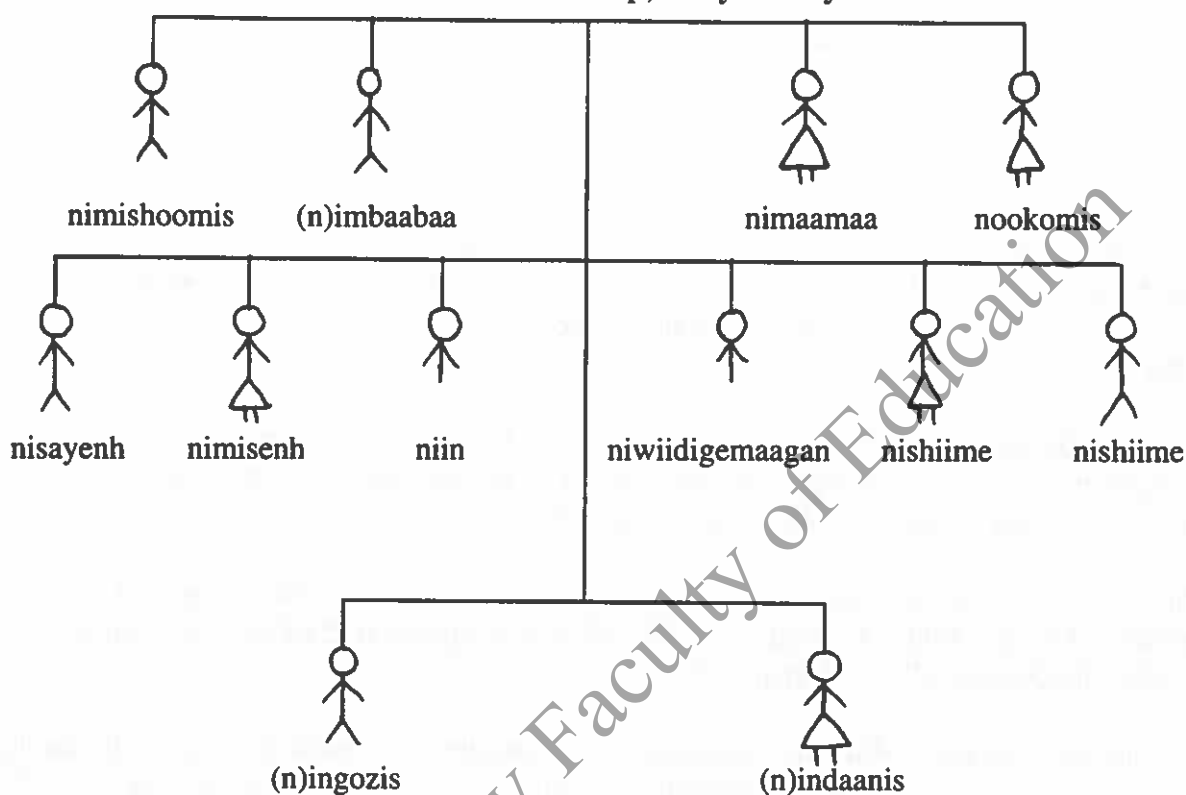
¹ Babaa- is a PREVERB which means '(do something) here and there, in different places.' In this sentence the combination of preverb+verb means 'he/she goes hunting.'

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 3

Exercise G - Translations on page 183.

Introduction to Kinship; "My Family"

1.



- Note that:
- 1) There are three terms for siblings in Ojibwe, one for an older brother, one for an older sister, and one for a younger brother or sister.
 - 2) Kinship words are always found in the possessive form.
 - 3) The suffix "ban", when used with kin terms, means that the relation is no longer living. For example, nimaamaayiban means my late mother.

Kinship charts are structured from the point of view of a particular family member, referred to as EGO. On the chart above, EGO is identified as **niin**, the Ojibwe first-person singular pronoun.

Now make your own chart, similar to the one above, but with your own family depicted. Draw a line through deceased family members.

Then, with a friend, ask and answer questions about relatives' names such as:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1) Aaniin ezhinikaazod gimishoomis? | Peter izhinikaazo nimishoomis. |
| 2) Aaniin ezhinikaazod gookomis? | Mary izhinikaazo nookomis. |
| 3) Aaniin ezhinikaazod gibaabaa? | Jacob izhinikaazo (n)imbaabaa. |
| 4) Aaniin ezhinikaazod gimaamaa? | Sarah izhinikaazo nimaamaa. |
| 5) Aaniin ezhinikaazod gigozis? | Thomas izhinikaazo (n)ingozis. |
| 6) Aaniin ezhinikaazod gidaan? | Emily izhinikaazo (n)indaanis. |

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 3

Ojibwe Kinship:

2. In English, we have one word for “aunt” which means “sister(s) of your father or mother.” In Ojibwe, there are two words for “aunt.” The first is used for your father’s sister(s) and the other is used for your mother’s sister(s). The same division is found with the word for uncle. In Ojibwe, there are two terms whereas in English there is but one.

This is just the beginning of an important difference between the Ojibwe and the English kinship systems. In the Ojibwe system, there are two types of aunts, uncles, and cousins. In the first category are mother’s sister and her children and father’s brother and his children. These are called **PARALLEL** aunts, uncles, and cousins because they are related to you through siblings (brothers or sisters) of the same sex.

The second category consists of those aunts, uncles and cousins who are related to you through siblings of opposite sexes. In this category are your mother’s brother and his children and your father’s sister and her children. These are called **CROSS** aunts, uncles and cousins.

The concepts of “parallel” and “cross” relatives are necessary for understanding the Ojibwe terms for cousins. You will find that parallel cousins use the same terms as “brothers” and “sisters” but cross-cousins are designated by different terms.

Certain kin terms are used when a male is speaking and others if a female is speaking. In the other cases the meaning of a term may differ depending upon whether the speaker is male or female. The following list includes these specific terms. Remember on your own family chart to use the appropriate terms.

	Male speaker	Female Speaker
Cross-cousin	(male) niitaawis ¹	(female) (n)indaangoshenh ²
Brother-in-law	niitaa	niinim
Sister-in-law	niinim	(n)indaangwe
Sibling (sister/brother) of opposite sex ³	(n)indawemaa	(n)indawemaa

You will notice that the word for a cross cousin of the opposite sex of EGO in the diagram is similar to the word for brother-in-law (for a female), or sister-in-law (for a male). This similarity probably reflects a very old pattern in which it was common (and even preferred) for a person to marry his cross-cousin; this pattern still occurs in some areas even during the contemporary period. So, in a way, these cross-cousin terms mean “marriageable relative.” Check the word for ‘mother-in-law’ on the next page. Where else on the chart do you find this word?

1. The term **niitaawis** refers to father’s sister’s son.

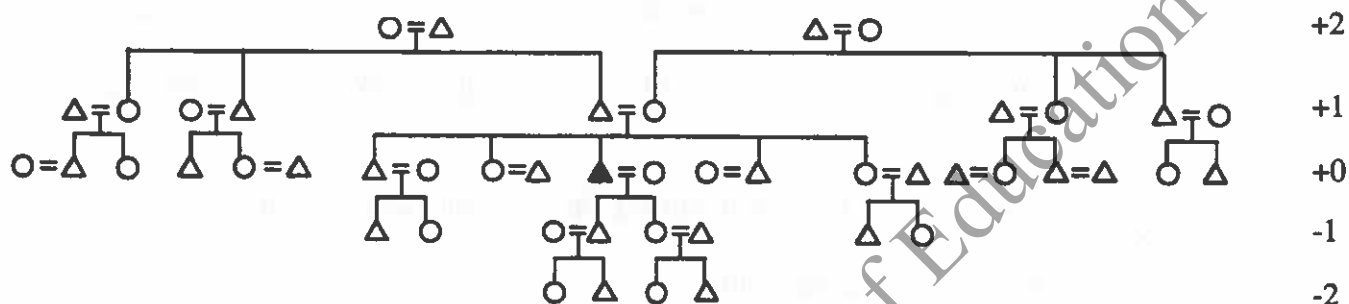
2. The term **nindaangoshenh** is used by female speakers to refer to mother’s brother’s daughter or father’s sister’s daughter.

3. There are separate terms for ‘brother’ and ‘sister’ which make other distinctions; these are listed on the following page.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 3

Additional Vocabulary (Optional):

3. Below is a basic chart of the Ojibwe family. Using the words given under the diagram, produce a colour key and colour each person on the chart according to their kin name. This chart has a male as EGO, so be sure to use the correct terms for a male speaker. There are other kinship terms which not listed here; you can check with your instructor or with another Anishinaabemowin speaker to find out which terms they use.



	Ojibwe	English Equivalent
Line /-2/	nookomis nimishoomis	my grandmother my grandfather
line /-1/	nimaamaa (n)imbaabaa ninoshenh nimishoome (n)inzigos (n)inzhishenh (n)inzigos	my mother my father my parallel aunt (mother's sister) my parallel uncle (father's brother) my cross aunt (father's sister) my cross uncle (mother's brother) my mother-in-law
Line /0/	niin nimisenh nisayenh nishime niinimoshenh (n)indaangoshenh niitaawis niitaa	I (EGO) my older sister/older parallel female cousin my older brother/older male parallel cousin my younger brother or sister/my younger parallel cousin my sweetheart, my cross cousin of opposite sex my female cross cousin (woman speaking) my male cross-cousin (man speaking) my brother-in-law (man speaking)
Line /+1/	(n)indaanis (n)ingozis (n)indoozhim nina'aanganikwe nina'aanganishiim	my daughter my son my parallel nephew/niece my cross niece/daughter-in-law my cross nephew/son-in-law
Line /+2/	noozhis	my grandchild

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 3

Pages 89 and 91 of this text are adapted from a language learning book called L.A.M.P. (which stands for “Language Acquisition Made Practical”), by E. Thomas and Elizabeth Brewster. (Published by Lingua House, 915 West Jackson, Colorado Springs, CO 80907, 1976. Material here is from pp. 206-208. Use restricted.)

L.A.M.P. is designed to help learners of languages for which teaching aids such as grammars and dictionaries are not readily available. Many of the methods in L.A.M.P. are adaptable to Ojibwe language learning, especially if one has the opportunity of living in a community of Ojibwe speakers. L.A.M.P. is recommended for students who wish to continue their Ojibwe studies after this course is over.

4. Here are some questions and answers involving kinship terms. English translations on page 183.

Aaniin endoodang gisayenh agwajiing?
Amanj igo. Ganabaj anokiidog¹.

Aaniin endoodang gimisenh biindigamig?
Jiibaakwe. Wii-wiisini.

Aaniin endoodang giwiiijiwaagan waabaninig?
Da-anokii noopiming.

Aaniin waa-doodang gibaabaa noongom gaa-giizhiganinig?
Wii-andawenjige.

Aaniin gaa-doodang gimaamaa bijiinaago?
Gii-boodawe agwajiing. Gii-jiibaakwe.

5. Now, try making up some questions and answers that use kinship terms.

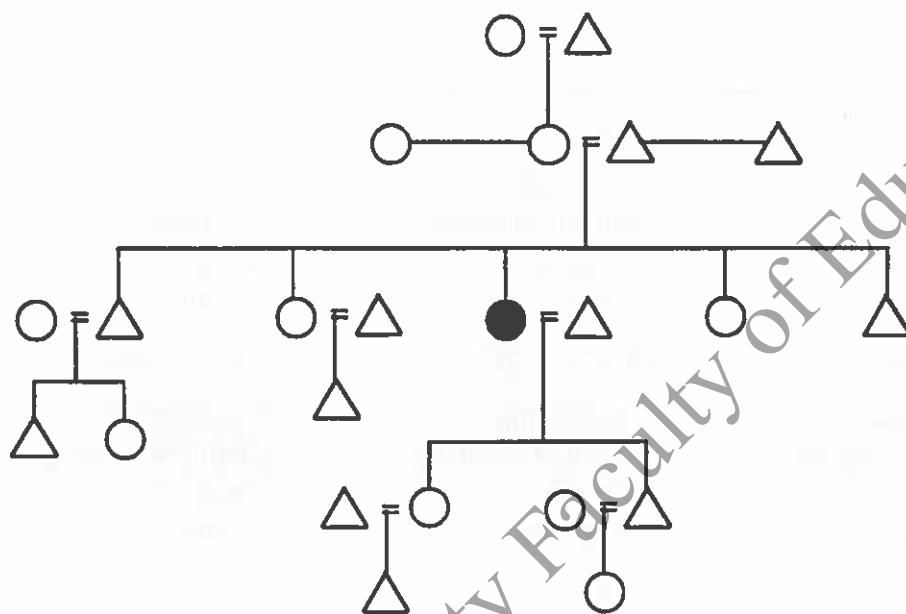
¹ The suffix **dog** on the end of the verb **anokii** is the DUBITATIVE suffix, which will be discussed in Unit 2, Lesson 4, page 138. The meaning of the verb and suffix is “he/she is probably working.”

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 3

Exercise H

Ojibwe Kinship

Using the diagram below, and the vocabulary on kinship terms: Produce a legend using a colour key and colour each person on the chart according to their kin name. This chart has "niin" as EGO, so be sure to use the correct terms for a male or female speaker.



= NIIN (EGO)

= _____
 = _____
 = _____
 = _____
 = _____
 = _____
 = _____
 = _____
 = _____
 = _____
 = _____

= _____
 = _____
 = _____
 = _____
 = _____
 = _____
 = _____
 = _____
 = _____
 = _____
 = _____

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 3

Exercise I

More About TA Verbs

- The following words express actions with different subjects (the doers of the action) and objects (those who have the action done to them). A heading such as;

(1 acting on 2)

means a first person (1) NIIN is doing something to a second person (2) GIIN. The English translations are on page 184.

(1 acting on 2)	(1 acting on 3)	(2 acting on 1)
giwaabamin	niwaabamaa	giwaabam
ginandawaabamin	ninandawaabamaa	ginandawaabam
giwiji'in	niwiji'aa	giwiji'
giwijiwin	niwijiwaa	giwijiw
(2 acting on 3)	(3 acting on 1)	(3 acting on 2)
giwaabamaa	niwaabamig	giwaabamig
ginandawaabamaa	ninandawaabamig	ginandawaabamig
giwiji'aa	niwiji'ig	giwiji'ig
giwijiwaa	niwijiwig	giwijiwig
(3 acting on 4)		
owaabamaan		
onandawaabamaan		
owiji'aan		
owijiwaan		

The verb **stem** is the part that doesn't change when you change the subject and the object:

niwaabamaa **giwaabam**

Here, the verb **stem** is **waabam**. Note that in the '2 acting on 1' forms there is a prefix but no suffix.

- Copy all the above examples into your notebook, and underline each verb stem. Working with first person markers (ni-) and second person markers (ki-), highlight all the **SUBJECTS** in yellow and all the **OBJECTS** in blue.

Questions and Answers Exercise:

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| (2 acting on 1) | (1 acting on 2) |
| Q. Giwaabam na? | A. Eya, giwaabamin. |
| (2 acting on 3) | (1 acting on 3) |
| Q. Giwaabamaa na? | A. Eya, niwaabamaa. |
| (3 acting on 1) | (3 acting on 2) |
| Q. Niwaabamig na? | A. Eya, giwaabamig. |

Now try making up some questions and answers by using TA verbs listed above.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 3

Observation: In some Ojibwe verbs, the subject marker comes at the beginning. These are called **DIRECT** forms. In other Ojibwe verbs, the object marker comes at the beginning. These are said to be **INVERSE** forms.

You'll need lots of practice in using these forms until you can understand and use them without thinking. First, try reading them in the comics on page 130. When the comics make sense to you, work with a partner and create your own short dialogues, to include as many forms as possible in meaningful contexts.



Opwaagan
(smoking pipe)

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 3

The Unspoken Language

In English, we associate certain qualities or ideas with specific animal, for example: “as sly as a fox,” “as busy as a beaver,” “as wise as an owl,” etc. Ojibwe speakers often make different associations than English speakers do.

As you learn the Ojibwe language and culture, watch for concepts that connect with the various animals in Ojibwe; don’t bring your English associations with you to Ojibwe!

3. In exercise I, you learned seven combinations of Transitive Animate (VTA) forms. Here is one more:

4 acting on 3 owaabamigoon “he (obv.) sees him”

This form would only be used when you’ve already been referring to the two people involved, and the subject of the action has previously been referred to in the obviative. For example:

3 acting on 4: Does John (3) see her (4)? John na owaabamaan?
4 acting on 3: Yes, and she (4) sees him (3). Eya, owaabamigoon gaye.

Other verbs in the 4 acting on 3 form:

owijjiwigoon omiinigoon

Now, let’s TRANSFORM some TA combinations: English translations on page 184.

VTA	Negative	Past
owijji’igoon	gaawiin owijji’igoosiin	ogii-wijji’igoon
gidamwaa	gaawiin gidamwaasii	gigii-amwaa
niwaabamig	gaawiin niwaabamigosii	nigii-waabamig
ominopwaan	gaawiin ominopwaasiin	ogii-minopwaan
	Voluntative	Future
giwijjiwin	giwii-wijjiwin	(gi)ga-wijjiwin*
gimiinig	giwii-miinig	(gi)ga-miinig

*The sequence of prefix giga- is usually reduced to ga-.

Practicing with TA Verbs

4. You have learned to handle eight different VTA subject-object combinations. Here they are:

2 on 1	<u>gi</u> —	1 on 2	<u>gi</u> — <u>in</u>
2 on 3	<u>gi</u> — <u>aa</u>	3 on 2	<u>gi</u> — <u>ig</u>
1 on 3	<u>ni</u> — <u>aa</u>	3 on 1	<u>ni</u> — <u>ig</u>
3 on 4	<u>o</u> — <u>aan</u>	4 on 3	<u>o</u> — <u>igoon</u>

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 3

Practice the forms above by combining various stems with the prefix-suffix combinations above. Here are some stems to practice with: English translations on page 185.

-waabam-	-andawenim-
-wiji'-	-zaagi'-
-wijiw-	-ganawenim-
-miin-	-waniikaan-

Exercise J

New Vocabulary

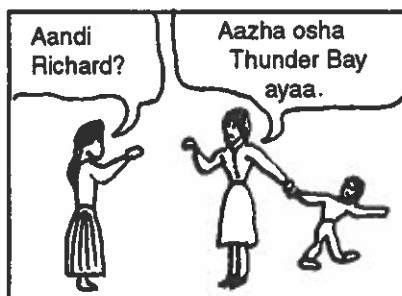
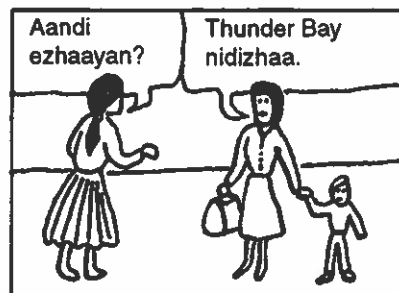
1.	Nizaagi'aa	I love him/her.
	Nizaagitoon	I love it.
	Niganawenimaa	I take care of him/her.
	Niganawendaan	I take care of it.
	Niminwenimaa	I like him/her.
	Niminwendaan	I like it.
	Nimigoshkaadendaan	I am worried about it.
	Niwaniikaanaa	I forget him/her.
	Niwaniikaadaan	I forget it.
	Niwiindamawaa	I tell him/her.
	Nigagwejimaa	I ask him.

Go through the appropriate language learning steps for each word. If you're not sure of what any word means, your instructor will help you. Listen carefully as your instructor pronounces these words.

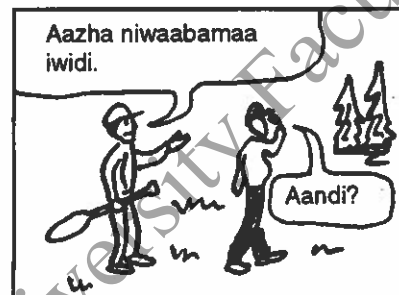
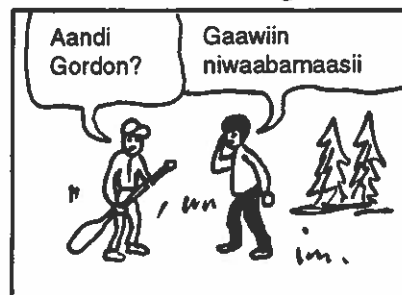
INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 3

2. English translations
on page 185.

Nimaajaa



Aandi nidinawemaagan?



Romance



Chief and Counselor



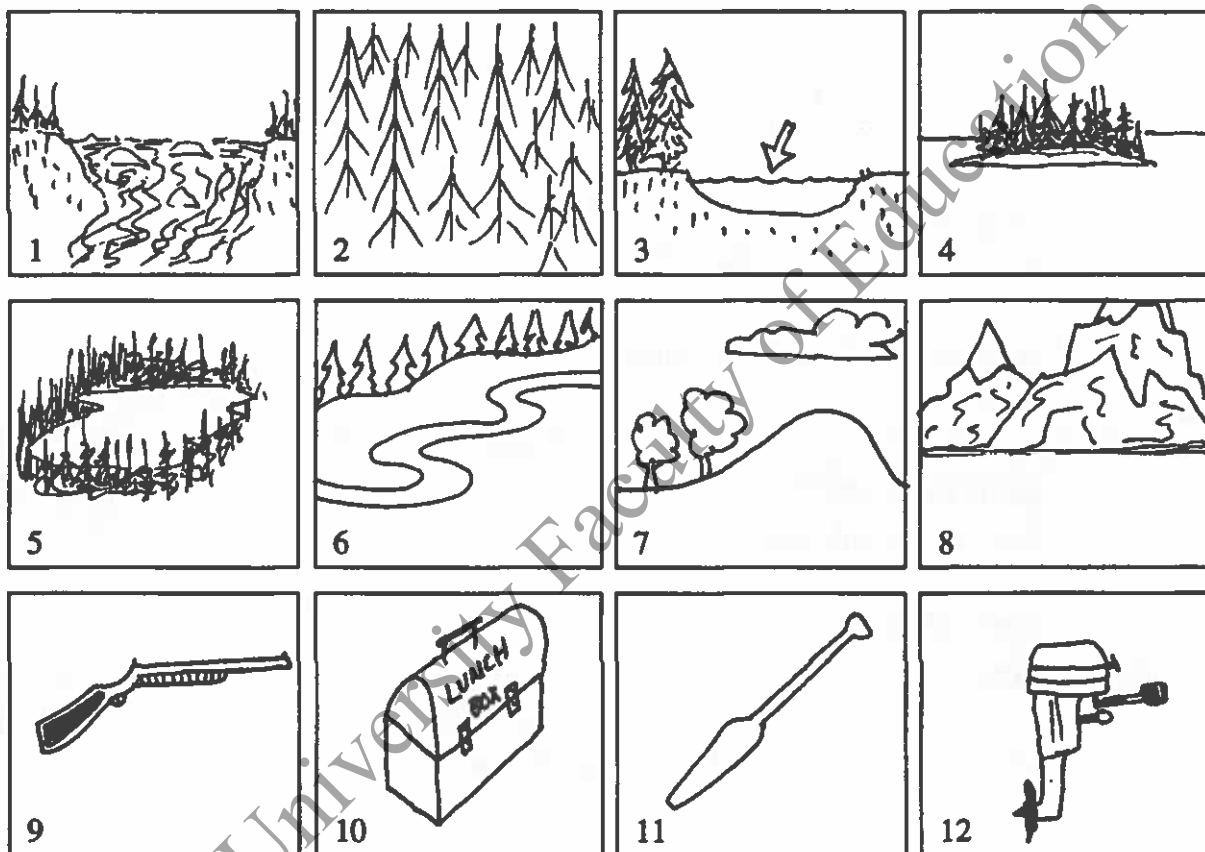
3. For further exercise, create your own comic strips and write mini-dialogues.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 4

Exercise A

Scenery and Useful Articles

1. Listen carefully as your instructor says the words which correspond to each of the following pictures.



Write in the number which corresponds to each picture. English translation on page 186.

zaaga'igan	# _____	baashkizigan	# _____
baawitig	# _____	ziibi	# _____
waanzhibiiyaa	# _____	bikwadinaa	# _____
abwi	# _____	maajiinikaajiganens ²	# _____
nawapowini-makakoons ¹	# _____	bagwajiya'iing	# _____
minis	# _____	wajiw	# _____

1. An alternate word for 'lunch box' is *wiisini-makakoons*.

2. An alternate word for 'motor' is *akikoons*.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 4

Reading and Understanding:

2. Listen carefully to the following questions and answers. Notice that many of the answers contain locative particles and endings. Notice also the obviative forms. English translation on page 186.

Aandi giigooyag?

Wedi baawitigong.

Aaniin endoodang Piitan bagwajigamig?

Binewan onandawaabamaan.

Aaniin endoodang amik waanizhibiiaang?

Onandawaabandaan ziibi.

Wegonen i'iwedi zaaga'iganiing?

Minis.

Aandi zaaga'igan?

Wedi jiigew-ziibiing.

Aandi ezhaayan?

Jiigew-ziibiing.

Giwaabamaa na adik wagijayi'ii bikwadinaang.

Eya, niwaabamaa.

Ginandawaabamaa na migizi besho wajiwing?

Gaawiin. Ninandawaabamaa makoons.

Aandi nibaashkizigan? Niiwii-nisaa ma'iingan.

Gaawiin omaa atemagasinoon gibaashkizigan.

Aandi nawapowini-makakoons? Niwii-wiisin.

Wedi wagijayi'ii adoopowining.

Gidandawenimaa na nindabwi?

Gaawiin. Gaa mashi. Baamaa waabang.

Gimaajiinikaajiganens dash wiin? Gidandawendaan ina?

Eya, wewiib nidandawendaan.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 4

Exercise C

Mini-dialogues:

1. Listen to the following dialogues in class and then read them on your own. Practice speaking these with your partner. English translation on page 187.

- A: 1 - Aandi nibaashkizigan?
Niwii-babaa-andawenjige.
2 - Aandi waa-izhaayan?
1 - Wedi jiigi-bikwadinaag.
2 - Giday na giga-wiijiiwig?
1 - Eya.
2 - Gigozis dash wiin? Gewiin na giwiiijiiwig?
1 - Gaawiin. Wii-nibaa geyaabi.
- B: 1 - Aandi nawapowini-makakoons?
2 - Namanj igo. Aaniish dash?
1 - Niwii-maajaa.
2 - Onh! Aaniish dash? Giwii-nandawaabamaa na awesii?
1 - Eya. Niwii-nandawaabamaag awesiiyag.
2 - Gidaan na giwiiijiiwig?
1 - Eya, gewiin owii-waabamaan waagoshan.
2 - Ahaaw, naanaage (gi)ga-waabamin.
- C: 1 - Wewiib, biidoon baashkizigan!
2 - Aaniish wiin dash?
1 - Gegoon niwaabandaan wedi.
2 - Aandi? Gaawiin gegoon niin niwaabandanziin.
1 - Omaa biizhaan.
Giwaabamaa na? Mooz osha awe!
2 - Giwii-baashkizwaa na?
1 - Gaawlin. Giin baazhkizo.

2. Now write two dialogues of your own of up to eight lines each. Practice these with your partner.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 4

Exercise B

Translation:

1. Translate the following questions and answers in Ojibwe.

- A. What are you doing today? _____
I am working today. _____
- B. Where are you going tomorrow? _____
I am going home tomorrow. _____
- C. Are you going hunting now? _____
No, I want to sleep. _____
- D. Are you always dancing at night? _____
No, I am always eating. _____
- E. Are you going to kill the moose? _____
No, I want to kill the caribou. _____
- F. Will you be going to the forest today? _____
Yes, I will be going with Frank. _____
- G. Does this man always sleep? _____
Yes, he is always sleeping. _____
- H. What do you want to do today? _____
I want to go home. _____
- I. What will you be doing the day after tomorrow? _____
I don't know. Maybe I'll be working. _____
- J. Are you going by the river? _____
Yes, I want to look for ducks. _____
- K. Did you see the eagle at the mountain yesterday? _____
No, I only saw a bear. _____
- L. Did Sally see the dog the day before yesterday? _____
No, she only saw a wolf. _____

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 4

Exercise D

Introduction to Preverbs

1. Increase your own "word power". Since the beginning of the course, you have been using preverbs, as in "bi-wiisinin" and "nitaa-nagamo". The preverbs in these words are:

bi -	here, come towards
debi-	enough

These are the ones you already know, but there are plenty more where they came from. Here are a few more preverbs to add to your vocabulary. Remember the hyphen (-) is important when joining preverbs to the verbs.

babaa-	here and there, in different places
booni-	stop, quit
nitaa-	skilled at, knows how, can do
ani-	away from, in progress towards
ishkwaa-	after, done, complete
jibwaa-	before
gagwe-	try, to make an effort towards
giimooji-	secretly
giinawi-	unable to find, fail at, no place for
maajii-	start, begin, proceed, move forward
ando-/andawi-	go to do, to go there and to do something
wani-	in error, wrongly, mistake
noonde-	want to, anxious, need to do something (before usual time)
made-	visible (at a distance)
gichi-	big, great, very

2. Here are some examples of how to use preverbs for the third person in sentences. Study and understand these sentences.

Babaa-andawenjige	He/she goes hunting.
Debi-minikwe	He/she has had enough to drink.
Booni-minikwe	He/she is stopped drinking.
Nitaa-jiibaakwe	He/she is skilled at cooking.
Ani-giiwe	He/she is getting ready to go home.
Ishkwaa-anokii	He/she completes the work.
Biizhaan jibwaa-gimiwang!	Come before it rains.
Gagwe-nagamo	He/she is trying to sing.
Giimooji-maajaa	He/she is secretly leaving.
Giinawi-minikwe	He/she is unable to find something to drink.
Maajii-ozhibii'ige	He/she is starting to write.
Ando-niimi	He/she is going out to the dance.
Wani-doodam	He/she makes a mistake/does something incorrectly.
Noonde-wii-giiwe	He/she want to go home anxiously.
Made-odamino	He/she is playing (over there)
Gichi-wiisini	He/she eats a big meal.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 4

3. Here are some examples of how to use preverbs for the first person in sentences. Study and understand these sentences.

Nidebi-minkwe.	I have had enough to drink.
Nibabaa-andawenjige.	I am going hunting.
Nibooni-minikwe.	I stop drinking.
Ninitaa-jiibaakwe.	I am skilled at cooking.
Nidani-giiwe.	I am getting ready to go home.
Nidishkwaa-anokii.	I complete the work.
Nibiizhaa jibwaa-gimiwang.	I am coming before it rains.
Nigagwe-nagam.	I am trying to sing.
Nigiimooji-maajaa.	I am secretly leaving.
Nigwiinawi-minikwe.	I am unable to find something to drink.
Nimaajii-ozhibii'ige.	I am starting to write.
Nidandawi-niim.	I am going out of the dance.
Niwani-doodam.	I am making a mistake/wrong doing.
Ninoonde-wii-giiwe.	I want to go home anxiously.
Nimade-odamin.	I am playing (over there).
Nigichi-wiisin.	I am eating a big meal.

4. Here are some examples of how to use preverbs for the second person in sentences. Study and understand these sentences.

Bi-wiisinin!	Come and eat!
Gidebi-wiisin.	You have eaten enough.
Gibabaa-andawenjige.	You are going hunting.
Gibooni-minikwe.	You stop drinking.
Ginitaa-giizhideb.	You are skilled at cooking.
Gidani-giiwe.	You are getting ready to go home.
Gidishkwaa-anokii.	You complete the work.
Gibiizhaa jibwaa-gimiwang.	You are coming before it rains.
Gigagwe-nagam.	You are trying to sing.
Gigiimooji-maajaa.	You are secretly leaving.
Gigiinawi-minikwe.	You are unable to find something to drink.
Gimaajii-ozhibii'ige.	You are starting to write.
Gidandado-niim.	You are going out to the dance.
Giwani-doodam.	You are making a mistake/wrong doing.
Ginoonde-wii-giiwe.	You want to go home anxiously.
Gimade-odamin.	You are playing (over there).
Gigichi-wiisin.	You are eating a big meal.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 4

Exercise E

Understanding How to Use Preverbs:

In this exercise, write your own sentences using preverbs. The examples given were in Exercise D and refer to first, second and third person. Repeat this exercise until you completely understand how to use preverbs in sentences.

Exercise F

More Preverbs:

In this exercise, write complete sentences using the following words. Each sentence should have a minimum of three words. The first one is done for you as an example.

Preverbs

gagwe-
nita-
giinawi-
ishkwaa-
andawi-
ani-
wani-
jibwaa-
gichi-
noonde-
maajii-
made-
gii-
da-

Verbs

anokii
dagoshinoomagan
zoogipon
giiwe
wiisini
gimiwan
nibaa
maajaa
maajii bizo
aakozi
niimi
odamino
biindige
boodawe

Nouns

gwiiwizens
ombaasin
abinoojii
wiiijiwaagan
ikwezens
bine
ikwe
animosh
giigoo
wiiba
baamaa
odaabaan
waabishkiiwe
inini

1. Booni-odamino ikwezens.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

8.

9.

10.

11.

12.

13.

14.

15.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 4

Exercise G

New Vocabulary and Expressions

1. izhinikaade. It is called
 izhinikaazo. His/her name is (or He/she is called)

anishinaabe	native person
anishinaabekwe	native woman
waabishkiiwe/zhaaganaash	white man
waabishkiiwekwe/zhaaganaashiikwe	white woman
anishinaabemo	He speaks the native language.
waabishkiiwemo/zhaaganaashiimo	He speaks English.
Oshta!	An expression roughly translated: "oops!" or "Oh my!"

Introduction to the Dubitative

2. Ojibwe speakers make an important distinction between what they are certain about and what they have some doubts about. For example: English translations on page 187.

	Certain	Uncertain
1	nidaakoz	nidaakozinaadog
2	gidaakoz	gidaakozinaadog
3	aakozi	aakozidog
13	nidaakozimin	nidaakoziminaadog
21	gidaakozimin	gidaakoziminaadog
22	gidaakozim	gidaakozimwaadog
33	aakoziwag	aakozidogwenag

Listen to and repeat the paradigm above. Note and underline the part of each word that indicates information is uncertain or there is some doubt about it. Verbs taking this form expressing doubt are said to be DUBITATIVE.

A dubitative form indicates that the speaker is unable or unwilling to say for sure that the action/state of the verb has really occurred. The speaker may be unwilling because he did not personally witness the event, or because he has only inferred or supposed the action. He may feel that he has forgotten some details, and so doesn't want to wholly commit himself to what he has said.

The dubitative may also be used with knowledge that is of a traditional nature. The dubitative is expressed in English by adding words such as "seems to be," or "must be" to the basic idea. For example:

Certain	Uncertain
He's sick.	He must be sick.
	He seems to be sick

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 4

An important difference between the dubitative in Ojibwe and English is in the consistency of its usage. In Ojibwe, most information that you assume or have not personally verified by direct observation is presented in the dubitative. So, if someone tells you something that you have not personally verified, you would normally use a dubitative in Ojibwe if you were to tell anyone else this information. Compare the following sentences.

Aakozi Bill.

Bill is sick. (I've seen it with my own eyes.)

Aakozidog Bill.

Bill seems to be sick. (I've heard it, but haven't seen it.)

Watch for dubitatives as you listen to people speaking, and try to use them in your own speech, when appropriate.

Now, ask and reply to the following questions which assume, rather than observe, the answers given. Then ask and answer some questions of your own in the same way. English translations on page 187.

Aaniin endoodang gisayenh?

Andawenjigedog.

Aaniin endoodang gimisenh?

Maajibizodog.

Aaniin endoodang giwiidigemaagan?

Jiibaakwedog.

Aaniin endoodang gishiime?

Odaminodog.

3. Reply to the following questions using the dubitative form for your answers. The first one has been done for you. English translation on page 188.

Aandi anishinaabekwe? _____ Maajaadog _____

Aandi waabishkiwe? _____

Aandi gigozis? _____

Aandi Zoozan? _____

Aandi nisayenh? _____

Aandi gishiime? _____

Aandi Piitan? _____

Aandi animosh? _____

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 4

Exercise H

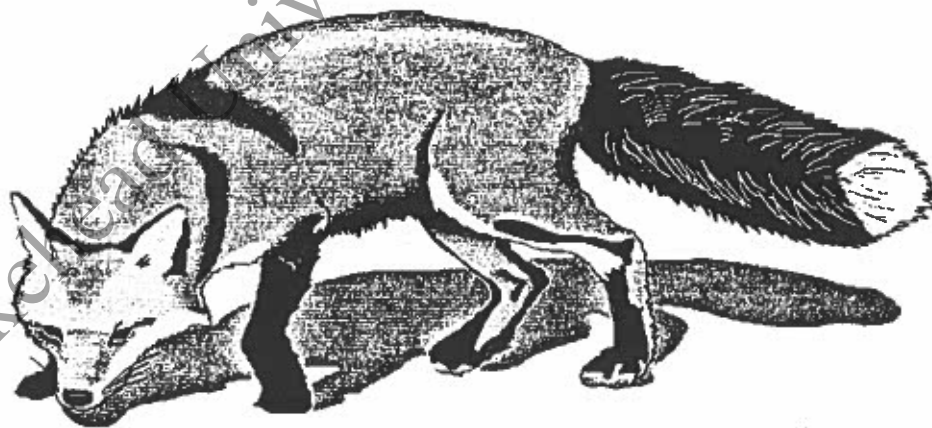
Mini-dialogues

1. Listen to the following dialogues in class, and then practice them with your partner. The English translations are on page 188.

A: 1 - Aandi gisayenh?
2 - Amanj igo. Anokiidog agwajiing.
1 - Nimisenh nandawaabamaan osayenyan.
2 - Aaniish dash?
1 - Amanj igo. Owii-wiijiwaadogwen maawiin.
2 - Giin dash? Aandi waa-izhaayan?
1 - Niwii-giwe. Niwii-wiisin.

B: 1 - Aandi gishiime?
2 - Geyaabi maawiin nibaadog.
1 - Aaniin ge-doodaman noongom gaa-giizhigak?
2 - Niga-nandawaabamaag binewag.
1 - Aandi? Noopiming ina?
2 - Gaawiin. Wedi jiigew-zaaga'iganiing.
1 - Geniin ninga-biizhaa.

2. In this exercise, write two mini-dialogues using dubitative forms. Practice your dialogues with your partner. Check each other's pronunciation, and get help from your instructor if you need it.



Waagosh

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 4

Exercise I

Dubitatives

Change each of the following verbs into the dubitative form. Be sure to include the English translation also. Do as shown in the example. English translation on page 188.

Certain	Uncertain
Aakozi	Aakozidog
He is sick.	He seems/must be sick.
1. Anokii	
2. Anishinaabemo	
3. Izhinikaade	
4. Jiibaakwe	
5. Gotaaji	
6. Maajaa	
7. Ozhibii'ige	
8. Niimi	
9. Nagamo	
10. Mawi	
11. Biindige	
12. Nibaa	
13. Dakaayaa	
14. Zhaaganaashiimo	
15. Waawaate	

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 4

Exercise J

Dubitatives

In this exercise, answer the following questions in the dubitative only. Use the verbs listed below. Give three different answers to each question. The English translations are on page 188.

1. Aaniin endoodang gwiiwizens? a) _____
b) _____
c) _____
2. Aaniin endoodang giday? a) _____
b) _____
c) _____
3. Aaniin waa-doodang zhaaganaash? a) _____
b) _____
c) _____
4. Aaniin waa-doodang abinoojii? a) _____
b) _____
c) _____
5. Aaniin ezhiwebak agwajiing? a) _____
b) _____
c) _____

anokii	zhaaganaash	maajiibizo	giwe	mawi
aakozi	debi-wiisini	nishkaadizi	odamino	nibaa
gizhide	izhinikaazo	ozhibii'ige	maajaa	niimi
boodawe	anishinaabemo	jiibaakwe	biizhaa	baapi
dagoshinoomagan	izhinikaade	dakaayaa	biindige	nagamo
gotaaji	waawaate	wanishkaa	minikwe	wiisini

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 5

Exercise A

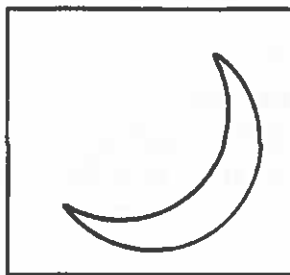
The Sun and the Moon

1. Listening and Understanding:

In this exercise, listen carefully as your instructor pronounces the names of the words pictured below. After you have heard each word several times, rewrite the words until you completely understand the meaning of the words. English translation on page 189.



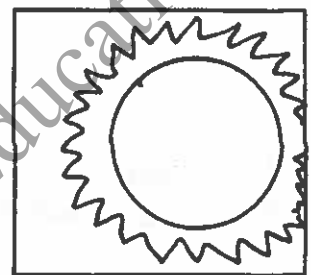
dibikad



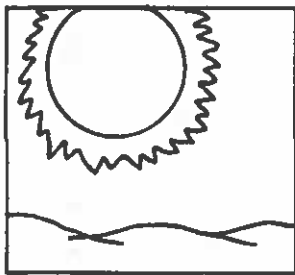
dibiki-giizis



anang



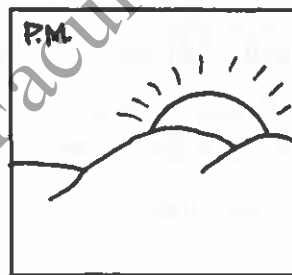
giizis



giizhigad



mooka'am



bangishimon



(1) dibaajimo
(2) aadizooke

2. Listening, speaking and understanding: The English translations are on page 189.

- A)
- 1 - Aazha dibikad. Nibaan!
 - 2 - Gaawiin, gaa mashi niwii-nibaasii.
Geyaabi niwii-odamin.
 - 1 - Wiiba sha giga-wanishkaa waabang.
 - 2 - Aaniish dash?
 - 1 - Giga-andawi-anokii waabang.
- B)
- 1 - Giwaabamaa na dibiki-giizis?
 - 2 - Gaawiin. Aandi?
 - 1 - Wedi waasa jiigayi'ii anangong.
 - 2 - Aandi? Gaawiin niwaabamaasii.
Bine eta niwaabamaa.
- C)
- 1 - Aazha mooka'am. Wanishkaan!
 - 2 - Aaniish dash? Geyaabi sha niwii-nibaa.
 - 1 - Wiiba osha giga-maadanokii.
 - 2 - Gaawiin niwii-anokiisii noongom gaa-giizhigak.
Nidaakoziiwimanji'. Wiindamaw nidoogimaam.
 - 1 - Gaawiin. Giin wiindamaw.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 5

Exercise B

Writing, Reading and Understanding:

1. In this exercise, write some of your own mini-dialogues. After completing your dialogues, work in pairs to practice the dialogue out loud. Make sure you understand the meanings of each sentence, and get help from your instructor with pronunciation if you need it.

Exercise C

Introduction to the Preterit

1. Ojibwe speakers distinguish between past activities or states that contrast with the present situation and those that do not. The PRETERIT marker **ban** indicates an action or state that was cut off in the past and no longer occurs, or an action or state that happened/existed in the remote past. We have already seen the use of **pan** at the end of a kin term, to indicate the contrast between a former, living relationship, and the present. In verbs, this contrast would be expressed in such ideas as:

"We went there every summer."

Nigii-izhaamin endaso-niibing.

(Inference: "and we still do.")

Nigii-izhaaminaaban endaso-niibing.

(Inference: "but we no longer do.")

"He got married five years ago."

Gii-wiidige naano-biboonong.

(Inference: "and is still married.")

Gii-wiidigeban naano-biboonong.

(Inference: "but is not longer married.")

"I bought a house."

Nigii-giishpinadoon waakaa'igan.

(Inference: "and I still own it.")

Nigii-giishpinadoonaaban waakaa'igan.

(Inference: "but I no longer own it.")

2.

Neutral

Preterit

1 nidibaajim

nidibaajimonaaban

2 gidibaajim

gidibaajimonaaban

3 dibaajimo

dibaajimooban

13 nidibaajimomin

nidibaajimominaaban

21 gidibaajimomin

gidibaajimominaaban

22 gidibaajimom

gidibaajimomwaaban

33 dibaajimowag

dobaajimoobaniig.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 5

Preterit-like ideas can be expressed in English by means of phrases, such as "formerly."

I (formerly) worked on a trap line.

He was (formerly) a sick child.

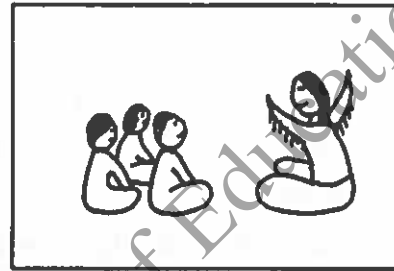
Exercise D

Dibaaajimo

1. Understanding the difference between "Dibaaajimo and Aadizooke."



Verb: Dibaaajimo
Noun: Dibaaajimowin



Verb: Aadizooke
Noun: Aadizookewin

There are basically two kinds of stories in Ojibwe. A dibaaajimowin is an ordinary story, true or fictional, short or long. An aatihsoohkewin is a legend story. An aadizookaan is a legend, with traditional (and sometimes religious) importance. In some areas, it is appropriate to tell aadizookaan only in certain seasons. Check this out in your area to ensure you do not cause offense.

After work is finished for the day, a family on the trapline can enjoy the evening together by telling stories. But don't stay up too late! Everyone will be up early the next morning for a full day of hard work: men checking and setting traps, women scraping and stretching skins, preparing and smoking meat and fish caught, in addition to the everyday tasks, and children carrying water, gathering wood, setting snares. And so to sleep...

2. Some examples:

- A) Ahaaw, bangii niga-dibaaajim.
Weshkad bezhigwaa megwaa
gii-niibing, nigii-andawaabamaa mooz.
Wiiba igo nigii-waabamaa moozoons.
Gaawiin nidoonji-baashkizwaasii.
Onzaam gii-agaashiinyi.
- B) Ahaaw, bangii niga-aadizooke.
Weshkad bezhigwaa aadizookaan.
Jakaabesh gii-izhinikaazo.
Gii-nitaa-nishoonadakamigizi.
Apane gii-gagwe-bakinaage.
"Niin gakina gegoon nidibendaan," gii-inendam.
Apane gii-mawine'ige.
Gii-nitaa-naajikwewe gaye.
Gaawiin wiikaa onji-bakinaagesii.
Apane gii-bakinaajigaazo.
Amii iwe minik ge-aadizookeyaan.
Baamaa miinawaa waabang.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 5

In order for you to understand the sentences on the previous page, you have to work with your instructor. Listen very carefully as your instructor pronounces the words. After you have heard each word several times, list the words that you don't know the meaning of. The instructor will give you proper translations.

More About Preterits:

There are many cases of preterit use in Ojibwe that are not matched by English equivalents. Therefore, it will be important for you to listen carefully to fluent speakers, note when they use “-ban” and think about what they mean. Gradually, as you grasp the idea, you'll be able to start using the preterit in your own speech.

3. Here are some dialogues in which the preterit is used. Ask your instructor to read them to you, and to explain any words you're not sure of: English translation on page 190.

- A) Aandi gisayenh?
Babaa-nazhikewizidog maawiin.
Gibabaa-wiijiiwaaban na ako?
Apane sha nigii-babaa-andawenjigeminaaban.
Noongom sha dash gaa wiikaa ji-wiijiiwag.
- B) Giwii-wiisininaaban ina?
Eya, weshkad sha gaa-gii-wiisiniyaambaan.
Gizhaabikiziganing inaabin. Wiyaas sha i'ima aiteban bijinaago.
Aazha mii go awiia gii-gidaagwen.
- C) Aandi dash gimookomaan?
Amanj igo, amii sa go geget e-gii-wanitooyaambaanen
awasinaago.
Gaa-zaagitooyaambaan.

Do not be concerned, for a while, about mastering the preterit in your own speech. Do, however, work on recognizing and understanding it when you hear the preterit in the speech of others.

For further practice with the preterits, with your instructor's assistance, try to write some of your own sentences.

For example, Nigii-nitaa-ozhibii'igenaaban.

I used to be good at writing, (but not anymore).

Reading and Writing Practice:

4. Rewrite the following sentences using the preterit form of the verb: English translation on page 190.

Gii-boodawejiigew-zaaga'iganiing. _____

Anishinaabekwe gii-jiibaakwe. _____

Gigii-ozhibii'ige na? _____

Aazha gii-maajibizo. _____

Gigii-nishkaadizimin. _____

Gigii-baap ina? _____

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 5

Exercise E

An Introduction to the Pejorative

1. Sometimes a speaker wants to indicate that something he is talking about is for some reason not very good. In English he may describe it as: nasty, useless, poorly made, broken down, good-for-nothing, worn-out, and the like. In Ojibwe, all these ideas (and more!) are conveyed in one neat way. Check the examples below to see how it is done:

jiimaanish	akikosh
waagaa'iganish	bimidewish
bashkiziganish	waawanosh

2. The word PEJORATIVE is usually used to denote this "ish" suffix. To give yourself lots of practice in hearing and understanding pejoratives, collect and bring to class "sets" of articles: a regular comb and a comb with missing teeth, a good cup and a cracked or chipped cup, etc. Have your teacher name these things for you. The more articles you bring, the more words you'll hear, and the easier it will be for you to recognize and use pejoratives in your own conversations.
3. What is done to the word to give this "not very good" idea? Could you try doing it yourself with the following words?

a. mookomaan	makizin
minikwaajigan	waabowayaan
wiigiwaam	apabiwin
b. gizhaabikizigan	diba'igiiziswaan
babagiwayaanegamig	bimisewin
adoopowin	wanii'igan

If you're not sure about any of your answers, look back to the work that you did on diminutives, pages 101 and 102. Notice that the idea of "not very good" works similar in fashion to the idea of "small in size." Now check your answers:

a. mookomaanish	makizinish
minikwaajiganish	waabowayaanish
wiigiwaamish	apabiwinish
b. gizhaabikiziganish	diba'igiiziswaanish
bagiwayaanegamigosh	ombaasinish
adoopowinish	wanii'iganish

4. Other notes on the Pejorative:

- a. An expression, roughly translated as "yuk!" carries the pejorative sound: ayish!
- b. Like the diminutive, the pejorative may be used also as a term of affection. Ask your teacher for examples of this.
- c. Sometimes you may have occasion to use both the diminutive and the pejorative endings at the same time. If you do, your word will sound something like this:

jiimaanenzhish

Which ending comes first? Ask your instructor for lots of other examples so that you will become very familiar with the sound and the usage of the pejorative, and of the combination of pejorative and diminutive forms.

Reading, Understanding and Translation:

- | Pejorative | | Pejorative | |
|------------|-------------------|------------|------------------|
| A: | potato _____ | B: | frying pan _____ |
| | salt _____ | | pot _____ |
| | teakettle _____ | | fish _____ |
| | duck _____ | | plate _____ |
| | carrot _____ | | lamp _____ |
| | dog _____ | | pipe _____ |
| | cradleboard _____ | | key _____ |

- jiiimaanenzhish / jiiimaan ens ish
 | | |
 noun diminutive pejorative

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 5

In this exercise, again use the words in (1) above. This time, try using both diminutive and pejorative form together.



Gabeshiiwi-boodawaan

(campfire)

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 5

Exercise G

Preterit and Pejorative and Diminutive

In this exercise, use the preterit “ban”, pejorative “ish” or the diminutive “ens” / “oons”.

Add the most appropriate suffix to each of the following words below.

Example: minjikaawanens = ‘a little mitten’

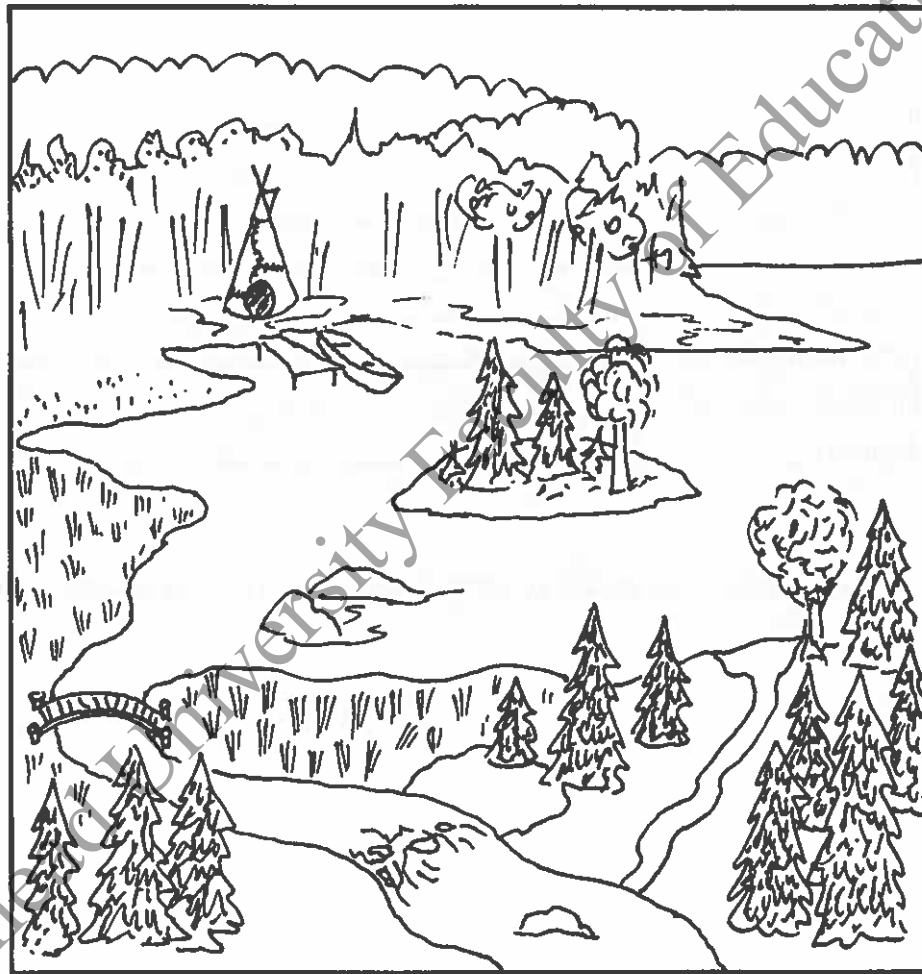
1. anang_____ = _____
2. boodawe_____ = _____
3. wanishkaa_____ = _____
4. giizis_____ = _____
5. nishiimenh_____ = _____
6. animoons_____ = _____
7. giwiiijiwaa_____ = _____
8. zaagaate_____ = _____
9. mookomaan_____ = _____
10. aadizooke_____ = _____
11. ombaasin_____ = _____
12. bangishimon_____ = _____
13. zhiishiib_____ = _____
14. maajiibizo_____ = _____
15. niday_____ = _____
16. dibaajimo_____ = _____
17. bakinaage_____ = _____
18. diba'igiiziswaan_____ = _____
19. naajikwewe_____ = _____
20. zhiiwitaagan_____ = _____
21. nibaashkizwaa_____ = _____
22. nigozis_____ = _____
23. makizin_____ = _____
24. gichipizon_____ = _____
25. giizhigad_____ = _____
26. onaagan_____ = _____
27. ozhibii'ige_____ = _____
28. nibaagan_____ = _____
29. gizhaabikizigan_____ = _____
30. andawenjige_____ = _____
31. dibiki-giizis_____ = _____
32. izhinikaazo_____ = _____

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 5

Exercise H

Geographical Map

Listen carefully as your instructor points to different places on the map. When you have heard each one several times, see if you can locate where the numbered terms go on the map. Ask your instructor to repeat the terms if you need to hear them again. English translation on page 191.



- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. noopiming | 7. jiigew |
| 2. mashkiig | 8. gakiwe ² |
| 3. aazhogan | 9. agaaming |
| 4. neyaashiiwan ¹ | 10. minisaabik |
| 5. agaami-ziibi | 11. wiikwedong |
| 6. niminaaweyandawaagan | 12. minis |

1. This word means 'there is a peninsula.' The word **neyaashi** means 'peninsula' and is most often used in the locative form: **neyaashiing**.
2. This word means 'to go over a portage.' It is often pronounced **kiiwe**. The word **onigam** means 'a portage.'

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE (Western Dialect) - UNIT 2; LESSON 5

Exercise I

Geographical map (terms)

In this exercise, answer the following questions. In some cases you may need to use the locative endings on nouns.

1. Aandi jiimaan? _____
2. Aandi ezhaayan? _____
3. Aandi bajiishka'ogaa? _____
4. Aandi minis? _____
5. Aandi neyaashiiwan? _____
6. Aandi aazhogan? _____
7. Aandi giigooyensag? _____
8. Aandi dash abwiig? _____
9. Aandi waa-izhaayan? _____
10. Aandi iidog dash zhiishiib? _____
11. Aandi iidog gichi-giigoo? _____
12. Aandi jiimaan? _____

Exercise J

Now draw your own map and use the list of words below to label the geographical features.

aazhogan
wiikwedong
mashkiig
waanzhibiiyaa
minis
gakiwe

niminaaweyaandawaagan
agaami-ziibi¹
minisaabik
noopiming
baawitig²
wajiw

agaaming
bikwadinaa³
neyaashiiwan
zaaga'igan
jiigew
ziibi

1. 'on the other side of the river.'
2. 'rapids.'
3. 'a hill.'

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 6

Unit 1 and Unit 2 Review

Exercise A

Twenty-Four Articles

1. This final lesson will review lessons 1 to 5. To successfully complete the review you will need to go over the vocabulary and structures you have learned, and review the pronunciation of each item.. After each exercise is completed, you will be given a variety of mini-tests, both oral and written. Let's begin with the twenty-four kitchen articles. Translate the following into Ojibwe. Write your answers in your notebook and check them.

Plate	Pepper	Bannock	Milk
Cup	Lard	Partridge	Fish
Knife	Water	Rabbit	Porridge
Spoon	Teakettle	Meat	Potato
Fork	Pot	Bread	Carrot
Salt	Frying pan	Egg	Duck

2. After completing the translation, you will be given a quiz in both oral and written formats.

Exercise B

Using Numbers

1. Numbers are very common words in Ojibwe. Review the pronunciation and the meaning of the words which are listed below. Translate the following into Ojibwe. Write your answers in your notebook and check them.

One	Seven	Thirteen	Nineteen
Two	Eight	Fourteen	Twenty
Three	Nine	Fifteen	Twenty-one
Four	Ten	Sixteen	Twenty-two
Five	Eleven	Seventeen	Twenty-three
Six	Twelve	Eighteen	Twenty-four

2. After completing the translation, you will be given a quiz in both oral and written formats.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 6

Exercise C

Using Numbers in Verb Forms

1. In lesson one, exercise H, you learned how to use numbers in verb form. Review your notes and textbook before you start to work on this exercise. Check the pronunciation of each Ojibwe word, and make sure you understand the meaning of each Ojibwe and sentence. Translate the following into Ojibwe. Write your answers in your notebook and check them.

VAI

There is one rabbit.
There are two partridges.
There are three fish.
There are four spoons.
There are five carrots.
There are six bannocks.
There are seven pots.
There are eight ducks.
There are nine teakettles.
There are ten frying pans.

VII

There is one egg.
There are two plates.
There are three knives.
There are four forks.
There are five eggs.
There are six cradleboards.
There are seven pieces of lard.
There are eight pieces of meat.
There are nine cartons of milk.
There are ten containers of salt.

2. After completing the translation, you will be given a quiz in both oral and written formats.

Exercise D

May I Introduce Myself?

1. When visiting Native language speaking communities, you will need to know some words, phrases and sentences to introduce yourself. Study the useful phrases listed below. Translate the following into Ojibwe. Write your answers in your notebook and check them.

Yes

No

Thank you

What is your name?

My name is _____.

Where are you from?

I am from _____.

Me too.

How about you?

Say it again.

Say it slowly.

Do you understand?

Yes, I understand.

No, I don't understand.

What is that (inanimate)?

Who is/what is that (animate)?

What is his/her name?

His/her name is _____.

2. After completing the translation, you will be given a quiz in both oral and written formats.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 6

Exercise E

Imperatives and Locatives

1. Imperative:

Imperatives are those words we use when we are telling someone what to do. You already have a very good idea how to use imperatives. Study those words which are listed below. Translate the following into Ojibwe. Write your answers in your notebook and check them.

Come in!
Stand up!
Go away!
Go home!
Go to sleep!
Sit down!
Come here!
Make (build) a fire!
Sing!
Get up!

2. Locatives:

In the Native language, nouns with locative endings could mean "in", "at" or "on". Study the meaning of the words listed below, and check the pronunciation with your instructor if necessary. Translate the following into Ojibwe. Write your answers in your notebook and check them.

On the stove.
At the airplane.
At the door.
In the canoe.
On the chair.
In the house.
At the window.
On the car.
On the kitchen table.
In the tent.
On the bed.
In the lake.

3. After completing the translation, you will be given a quiz in both oral and written formats.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 6

Exercise F

Intransitive Verbs (VAI)

1. As you are already aware, in the Native language, all intransitive verbs are complete sentences. Study the meaning of the words listed below, and check the pronunciation with your instructor if necessary. Translate the following into Ojibwe. Write your answers in your notebook and check them. Translate the following verbs with the form that means 'he/she...'

Singing

Sleeping

Sick

Dancing

Make a fire

Working

Angry

Eating

Go home

Enough eating

Cooking

Playing

2. After completing the translation, you will be given a quiz in both oral and written formats.

Exercise G

What Time is it?

1. Using what you have learned. In this review exercise, you will study some of the telling time phrases. Translate the following into Ojibwe. Write your answers in your notebook and check them.

Q. What time is it?

1. It is one o'clock.
2. It is two o'clock.
3. It is three o'clock.
4. It is four o'clock.
5. It is five o'clock.
6. It is six o'clock.
7. It is seven o'clock.
8. It is eight o'clock.
9. It is nine o'clock.
10. It is ten o'clock.
11. It is eleven o'clock.
12. It is twelve o'clock.

2. After completing the translation, you will be given a quiz in both oral and written formats.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 6

Exercise H

What Are They Doing?

1. In Unit 2, Lesson 1, Exercise A, you learned nouns and expressions. Study the meaning of the words listed below, and check the pronunciation with your instructor if necessary. Translate the following into Ojibwe. Write your answers in your notebook and check them.

Woman	Man	Child	Boy	Girl
Women	Men	Children	Boys	Girls

I don't know.

What are you doing? (singular)

What am I doing?

What is he/she doing?

What are they doing?

What are you doing? (pl.)

What are we doing? (pl. inclusive)

What do you want to do?

What do I want to do?

What does he/she want to do?

What do they want to do?

What do you want to do? (pl.)

What is he/she called? (What's his name?)

What is it called? (What's its name?)

Ask him!

Tell him!

2. After completing the translation, you will be given a quiz in both oral and written formats.

Exercise I

Voluntatives

1. As you already know, it is possible to put the prefix "wii-" before most verbs. Doing this expresses the idea "want to" or "intend to." Study the meaning of the words listed below, and check the pronunciation with your instructor if necessary. Translate the following into Ojibwe. Write your answers in your notebook and check them.

I want to drink water.

Do you want to drink water too?

The man wants to work today.

He/she wants to work today.

He/she wants to make a fire outside.

No, I don't want to play.

How about the children. Do they want to play?

Do you want to go home? (pl)

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 6

2. Past, Present and Future Tenses:

I am going home today.

Did you work yesterday?

He/she will be leaving tomorrow.

You slept yesterday. (pl)

They will be dancing soon.

3. After completing the translations, you will be given a quiz in both oral and written formats.



Madwe'ige / Dewe'ige

(He is drumming)

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 6

Exercise J

Vocabulary

Study the meaning of the words listed below, and check the pronunciation with your instructor if necessary. Translate the following into Ojibwe. Write your answers in your notebook and check them.

Dog	Ax
Shoe	Lamp
Book	Broom
Cradleboard	Key
Pencil	Pipe
Blanket	Pillow

2. First Person Plural:

We are going home. (incl.)

We are eating. (incl.)

We are making a fire. (incl.)

We are sick. (incl.)

We are writing. (excl.)

We are sleeping. (excl.)

We are playing. (excl.)

We are leaving. (excl.)

3. Diminutives:

Skunk

Beaver

Wolf

Duck

Baby skunk

Baby beaver

Baby wolf

Baby duck

4. After completing the translations, you will be given a quiz in both oral and written formats.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 6

Exercise K

Transitive Verbs

1. Study the meaning of the words listed below, and check the pronunciation with your instructor if necessary. Translate the following into Ojibwe. Write your answers in your notebook and check them.

I see a woman.

Do you want/need a dog?

I am looking for a boy.

You are eating a fish.

Do you see an airplane?

I want/need a book.

Are you looking for a knife?

I am eating moose meat.

2. How is the Weather?

a) Windy

e) Northern lights

i) Foggy

b) Cold

f) Thundering

j) Calm

c) Hot

g) Raining

k) Overcast

d) Snowing

h) Sunny

l) Cloudy

3. Some Useful Expressions:

What?

What do you want?

What for?

Why not?

Where are you going? (sing)

Where are you going? (pl.)

How is the weather?

What's going on?

Very, quite.

4. After completing the translations, you will be given a quiz in both oral and written formats.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 6

Exercise L

Obviatives

1. In this review exercise, concentrate on the meanings of the words, phrases and sentences. Pay particular attention to extra endings. Look carefully at the objects of each sentence. Translate the following into Ojibwe. Write your answers in your notebook and check them.

I am eating fish.

You are eating fish.

He/she is eating fish.

I am eating meat.

You are eating meat.

He/she is eating meat.

2. **Third Person Only:**

He/she sees the partridge.

He/she likes the taste of bear.

He/she is looking for goose.

He/she is cooking skunk.

He/she wants/needs a spoon.

He/she loves the dog.

He/she is taking care of my older brother.

He/she is eating an egg.

He/she sees the house.

He/she likes the taste of meat.

He/she is looking for lard.

He/she is cooking a potato.

He/she loves milk.

He/she takes care of the canoe.

3. After completing the translations, you will be given a quiz in both oral and written formats.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 6

Exercise M

Possessive Nouns

1. In this review exercise, concentrate on the meanings of the words, phrases and sentences. As you are already aware, the possessive nouns do not have any particular rule that you can follow. Pay particular attention to extra endings. Translate the following into Ojibwe. Write your answers in your notebook and check them.

My chair

My eggs

My clock

My forks

Your pencil

My doors

Your kettle

Your knives

His tea

His bread

His cups

His bannock

2. Vocabulary:

Sweater

Shirt

Sock

Scarf

Hat

Belt

Mitten

Blouse

Pants

Coat

3. My Family:

My grandfather

Myself

My younger brother

My grandmother

My spouse

My younger sister

My father

My older sister

My son

My mother

My older brother

My daughter

4. After completing the translations, you will be given a quiz in both oral and written formats.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 6

Exercise N

More About TA Verbs

1. In this review exercise, concentrate on the meanings of the sentences listed below. The following words express actions with different subjects (the doers of the action) and objects (those who have the action done to them). A heading such as;

(1 acting on 2)

means a first person (1) NIN is doing something to a second person (2) GIIN.

Translate the following into Ojibwe. Write your answers in your notebook and check them.
Note: The verb stem is the part that doesn't change when the subject and object do.

(1 acting on 2)

I see you.
I am looking for you.
I am helping you.
I am going with you.

(2 acting on 1)

You see me.
You are looking for me.
You are helping me.
You are going with me.

(3 acting on 1)

He/she sees me.
He/she is looking for me.
He/she is helping me.
He/she is going with me.

(3 acting on 4)

He/she sees him.
He/she is looking for him/her.
He/she is helping him.
He/she is going with him.

(1 acting on 3)

I see him/her.
I am looking for him/her.
I am helping him/her.
I am going with him/her.

(2 acting on 3)

You see him/her.
You are looking for him/her.
You are helping him/her.
You are going with him/her.

(3 acting on 2)

He/she sees you.
He/she is looking for you.
He/she is helping you.
He/she is going with you.

2. After completing the translations, you will be given a quiz in both oral and written formats.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 6

Exercise O

Scenery and Useful Articles

1. In this review exercise, study the meanings of the words listed below. Translate the following into Ojibwe. Write your answers in your notebook and check them.

Lake
Rapid
Pond
Paddle
Lunch Box
Island

Gun
River
Hill
Outboard Motor
Forest, Wilderness
Mountain

2. Vocabulary and Expressions:

It is called
His/her name is
Native person
Nativewoman

White woman
He speaks the Native language.
He speaks English
Whiteman

3. Certain and Uncertain:

He is sick
He is working
He must be working

He must be playing
He must be sick
He must be sleeping

4. After completing the translations, you will be given a quiz in both oral and written formats.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 6

Exercise P

More II Verbs (VII)

1. In this review exercise, study the meanings of the words listed below. Translate the following into Ojibwe. Write your answers in your notebook and check them.

It is night

Moon

It is day

Star

It is sunset, the sun is setting

Sun

It is sunrise, the sun is out

He/she is telling a story

He/she is telling a legend story

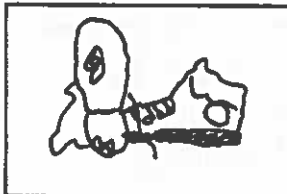
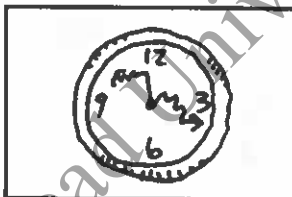
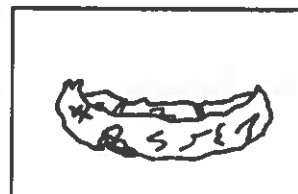
2. Preterit:

We went there every summer but we no longer do.

He got married five years ago but is no longer married.

I bought a house but I no longer own it.

3. Name these articles in pejorative form:



4. After completing the translations, you will be given a quiz in both oral and written formats.

Exercise Q

Geographical Terms

1. In this review exercise, study those words which are listed below. Translate the following into Ojibwe. Write your answers in your notebook and check them.

In the bush (in the forest)

Swamp

Bridge

There is a peninsula (point in the lake)

Across the river

On the shore

Portage

Across the lake or river

Dock

At the bay

2. After completing the translations, you will be given a quiz in both oral and written formats.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; REVIEW LESSONS

Let's Look Back at What You Have Learned Unit 2; Lessons 1 to 5

1. Review the words you know:

A. Nominals

Animate Nouns:

aadizookaan	giizis	nindaanis, odaanisan
abinoojii	gwiizizens	ninday, odayan
abwi	ikwe	nisayenh, osayenyan
adik	ikwezens	nishiime, oshiimeyan
amik	inini	niwiiijiwaagan, owiiijiwaaganan
anang	ma'iingan	nookomis, ookomisan
animosh	makwa	opwaagan
anishinaabe	minjikaawan	ozhibii'iganaak
anishinaabekwe	mooz	waabishkiiwe
azhigan	nibaabaa, obaabaayan	waabishkiiwekwe
bineshii	nigozis, ogozisan	waagosh
diba'igiiziswaan	nika	zhaaganash
dibiki-giizis	nimaamaa, omaamaayan	zhaaganaashiikwe
giboodyegwaazon	nimisenh, omisenyan	zhigaag
giizhoopizon	nimishoomis, omishoomisan	

Inanimate Nouns:

aabaabika'igan	giizisoo-masina'igan	pikwan
aazhogan	jiishta'igan	waabowayaan
apikweshimon	maajiinikaajiganens	waagaakwad
baashkizigan	makizin	waasechigan
baawitig	mashkiig	waazakonenjigan
babagiwayaan	mazina'igan	wajiw
bagwajiya'iing	minis	wiiwakwaan
biiskawaagan	minisaabik	zaaga'igan
dibaajimowin	nawapowini-makakoons	ziibi
dikinaagan	niminaaweyaandawaagan	
gijipizon	ombaasin	
giishkijiiwayaan	onigam	

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; REVIEW LESSONS

Pronouns:

ninawind	giinawind	giinawaa	wiinawaa
geniinawind	gegiinawind	gegiinawaa	gewiinawa
awiiya	nitam		

B. Verbs

Animate Intransitive Verbs:

aadizooke	gawaji	odamino
anishinaabemo	izhinikaazo	ozhibii'ige
bimaadizi	maajiibizo	ozhiitaa
daashkiga'ise	mawi	waabishkiiwemo
dagoshin	minikwe	zaaga'am
dibaajimo	(n)andawenjige	zhaaganaashiimo
gakiwe	naadoobii	

Inanimate Intransitive Verbs:

animikiikaa	gakiwe	ningwakwad
anwaatin	gashkawan	ningwaanakwad
awan	giizhigad	noodin
baabiidaanakwad	gtimiwan	waanzhibiiyaa
bangishimon	gizhide	waaseyaa
bikwadinaa	izhinikaade	waashekwan
dagoshinoomagan	maazhi-giizhigad	waawaate
dakaayaa	mooka'am	zaagaate
dibikad	neyaashiiwan	zoogipon

Transitive Animate Verbs:

nibiina'waa	niminopwaa
nidamwaa	ninanaandawaabamaa
nidandawaabamaa	ninisaa
nidandawenimaa	niwaabamaa
niganawenimaa	niwiji'aa
nigiizhizwaa	niwijiwaa
nigojaanimendami'ig	nizaagi'aa
nimiinaa	

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; REVIEW LESSONS

Transitive Inanimate Verbs:

nibiina'aan	nigojaanimendami'igon	ninitoon
nidandawaabandaan	nimaamidonendaan	niwaabandaan
nidandawendaan	nimiijin	niwaniikaadaan
niganawendaan	niminopodaan	niwiijitoon
nigiiizhizaan	ninanaandawaabandaan	nizaagitooon
nigojaanimendaan		

C. Particles

agaaming	baanimaa	noopiming
ambegish	bijiinaago	waabang
awasinaago	daga	wegonen dash?
awasiwaabang	geshdine	wegonen?
aanapii / aaniinpii?	jiigew	weshkad
aaniish	mah!	wiiba
aaniish dash?	naanaage	wiikwedong
aapiji	noongom	

D. Preverbs

andaw-/ando-	gagwe-	maajii-
ani-	gichi-	made-
babaa-	giimooji-	nitaa-
bi-	ishkwaa-	noonde-
booni-	jibwaa-	wani-
debi-	giinawi-	wii-

E. Expressions

Amanj igo.	Aan waa-doodameg?
Aan endoodman?	Aan ezhinikaazod?
Aan endoodamaan?	Aan ezhinikaadeg?
Aan endoodang?	Aan ezhiwebak?
Aan endoodamowaad?	Aan enakamigak?
Aan endoodameg?	Aan endasiwaad?
Aan endoodamang?	Aaniish dash?
Aan waa-doodaman?	Aaniin minik?
Aan waa-doodamaan?	Aandi ezhaayan?
Aan waa-doodang?	Aandi ezhaayeg?
Aan waa-doodamowaad?	Oshta!
Wegonen endawendaman?	Ayish!
Wegonen dash?	
Gagwejim!	
Wiindamaw!	

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Unit 2; Lessons 1-6

In this section, we have provided English translations for the Anishinaabemowin words and sentences introduced in Unit 2.

Lesson 1.

Exercise A (page 78)

1st Row	woman	man	child	boy	girl
2nd Row	women	men	children	boys	girls

Exercise B (page 80)

1. The partridge is eating.
The fish are afraid.
The men are working.
The women is working.
The partridges are eating.
The girl is building / making a fire.
The women are working.
The child is sleeping.
The fish is afraid.
The man is working.
The children are sleeping.
The girls are building / making a fire.
3. 1). I am sleeping. I am playing. I am angry.
(page 82) 2). You are sleeping. You are playing. You are angry.
3). H/she's sleeping. H/she's playing. H/she's angry.
4). They're sleeping. They're playing. They're angry.
5. Negative Forms (page 82)
 - 1). I'm not sleeping. I'm not playing. I'm not angry.
 - 2). You're not sleeping. You're not playing. You're not angry.
 - 3). H/she's not sleeping. H/she's not playing. H/she's not angry.
 - 4). They're not sleeping. They're not playing. They're not angry.
6. The children are afraid.
(page 83) The boys are going home.
I am sleeping.
The girls are working.
Are the partridges full / had enough to eat?
Are the boys angry?
No, they're building / making a fire.
Maybe they are sick.
They're eating soon.
The women are singing.
Are the fish afraid?

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise C (page 84)

- Example:
- 1 - Where are the children?
 - 2 - They are playing outside.
 - 1 - Where outside.
 - 2 - Over there beside the teepee.
 - 1 - Are you playing too?
 - 2 - No, I'm working. How about you?
 - 1 - No, I'm working too.

Exercise D

The Voluntative (page 84)

- | | | |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 1st Line | H/she's going home.
Does h/she want to go home? | H/she wants to go home.
No, h/she does not want to go home. |
| 2nd Line | They're sleeping.
Do they want to sleep? | They want to sleep.
No, they don't want to sleep. |
| 3rd Line | You are working.
Do you want to work? | You want to work.
No, you don't want to work. |
| 4th Line | H/she's making a fire.
Does h/she want to make a fire? | H/she wants to make a fire.
No, h/she does not want to make a fire. |
| 2.
(page 85) | I am drinking.
You are drinking.
H/she's drinking.
They're drinking. | I am crying.
You are crying.
H/she's crying.
They're crying. |
| | I am laughing.
You are laughing.
H/she's laughing.
They're laughing. | I am eating.
You are eating.
H/she's eating.
They're eating. |

* I want to drink. You want to laugh. H/she wants to cry.

3. A).
(page 85)
- 1 - The child is crying.
 - 2 - Maybe h/she wants to drink.
 - 1 - Milk?
 - 2 - H/she's drinking now.
 - 1 - H/she wants to sleep.
 - 2 - H/she's sleeping now.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

- B). 1 - Where are the women?
(page 85) 2 - They're building a fire.
They want to cook.
1 - Where?
2 - There in the teepee.
1 - Do they want to eat / Are they hungry?
2 - Yes
1 - You (too) come and eat. (too)
- C). 1 - Are the boys angry? No, they're working.
(page 85) 2 - Do they want to go home soon?
1 - Yes, they want to go home soon.
2 - They want to eat and they want to go to sleep. How about you?
1 - I'll go home too later. (in a while)

Exercise F (page 88)

1. A). What are you doing?
B). Me?
A). Yes, you.
B). I'm cooking. How about you?
A). I don't want to cook. I want to play.
B). Do you want to eat?
A). Okay, only a little bit.
B). Me too. I want to eat a little bit/some.
2. A). What are they doing?
B). They're not working, they're sleeping.
A). How about you?
B). I don't want to sleep, I want to work.
A). Where?
B). By the house.
A). Me too, I want to work.

Exercise G

1. Past, present and future tenses:

Note: Translations are done in text.

2. Present Tense: (page 89)

I am going home.
You are going home.
H/she is going home.
You (plural) are going home.
They are going home.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Past Tense (page 89)

I went home / I did go home.
You went home. / You did go home.
H/she went home. / h/she did go home.
You (plural) went home.
They went home.

Future Tense (page 89)

I will be going home.
You will be going home.
H/she will be going home.
You (plural) will be going home.
They will be going home.

What did you do to form the voluntative (page 89)

I want to go home.
You want to go home.
H/she wants to go home.
You (plural) want to go home.
They want to go home.

3. Today, I am working.
Yesterday, I worked / I did work.
Tomorrow, I'll work / I'll be working.
- Do you want to sleep now?
Were you sleeping yesterday?
Are you going to be sleeping tomorrow?

H/she is playing now.
H/she played the day before yesterday.
H/she will play the day after tomorrow.

Are you sick now?
Were you sick a long time ago?
Are you going to be sick much later?

4. I am going home.
I went home / I did go home.
I will be going home.

He is making a fire.
He was making a fire.
He'll be making a fire.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

They are working.
They were working.
They will be working.

You (singular) are eating.
You were eating.
You will be eating.

Are you (plural) laughing?
Were you (plural) laughing?
Will you be (plural) laughing?

Exercise J

New Vocabulary (page 92)

dog	pencil / pen
shoe	blanket
book / paper	pillow
cradleboard	pipe
lamp	axe
broom	key

Lesson 2:

Plural Pronouns;

Note: Translations are done in text.

2).
(page 93)

Yes. We/us. (exclusive) Yes. We/us. (inclusive) Yes. You (plural) Yes. They/them.	How about us (exclusive)? How about us (inclusive)? How about you (plural)? How about them/they?
Us, too (exclusive). Us, too (inclusive). You (plural) too. They/them too.	Us first/next, our turn (exclusive). Us first/next, our turn (inclusive). You (plural) first/next, your turn. Them first/next, their turn.
Not us/we (exclusive). Not us/we (inclusive). Not you (plural). Not them/they.	

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

First Person Plural (page 94)

We are going home. (inclusive)
We are eating. (inclusive)
We are making a fire. (inclusive)
We are sick. (inclusive)
We are writing. (inclusive)
We are crying. (inclusive)
We are singing. (inclusive)
We are laughing (inclusive)
We are working (inclusive)

3. We are drinking (exclusive)
We are writing. (exclusive)
We are afraid. (exclusive)
We want to eat / We're hungry.
We are full / had enough to eat.
We are sleeping. (exclusive)
We are cooking.
We are making a fire (exclusive)
We are working.

5. Using what you have learned (page 95)

getting up
leaving
come in
building a fire

singing
coming
angry
dancing

6. What are you doing?
What am I doing?
What is h/she doing?
What are they doing?
What are you (plural) doing?
What are we doing?

What do you want to do?
What do I want to do?
What does h/she want to do?
What do they want to do?
What do you (plural) want to do?
What do we want to do?

Exercise B (page 95)

- I Are you (plural) working today?
Yes, we are working.

Are we going to work today?
Yes, we are going to work.

Are you (plural) going home tomorrow?
No, we're not going to go home.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Are we leaving tomorrow?

We are not leaving tomorrow.

Were you (plural) singing yesterday.

Yes, we sang / we did sing.

Are we going to cook soon?

Yes, we will cook soon.

Are you (plural) sleeping now?

We're not sleeping yet.

2. Do you (plural) want to eat?

(page 96) Are you going home tomorrow?

Were you (plural) sick the day before yesterday?

Are we going to work the day after tomorrow?

Are we going to leave soon?

Do they want to sleep now?

Are you full now / did you have enough to eat now?

Are we going to make a fire in the stove tomorrow?

3. Note: Translations are done in the text.

Exercise C (page 97)

Where is the calendar? Beside / near the window.

Where is the clock?

Where is the dog?

Where is the lamp?

Where is the cradleboard?

Where is the book?

Where is the house?

Where is the axe?

Exercise D (page 98)

1.
 - a. The dog is sleeping / asleep now.
 - b. The clock is on the table.
 - c. The children are crying.
 - d. The woman is cooking on the stove, (now, then)
 - e. The lamp is on the table.
 - f. The man is drinking (now, already).
 - g. The girl is making a fire already.
 - h. The cradleboard is at the door.
 - i. The boy is writing (now, already).
 - j. The calendar is on the chair.
 - k. The shoes are by the door.
 - l. The woman is laughing.
 - m. The dog is singing.
 - n. The man, boy and girl are eating at the table.
 - o. The partridge is by the door.
 - p. The children are making a fire.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

2. A) 1 - Where is the dog?
(page 98) 2 - Over there by the teepee.
1 - What is he doing?
2 - He is eating.
1 - How about you? What are doing?
2 - I want to eat, too.
1 - Not me, I don't want to eat. I want to leave / go.
- B) 1 - What do you want to do?
(page 98) 2 - Bring the bannock and eggs!
Do you want to eat, too?
1 - No, I want to work.
2 - Where?
1 - Far away in the bush.
You too?
2 - No, I want to sleep.
- C) Knock! Knock!
(page 98) 1 - Who's there / Who's that?
2 - Me, it's John.
1 - Well, come in! Sit down here!
Do you want to drink tea?
2 - No, only water.
- D) 1 - What is the woman doing?
(page 99) 2 - She is making a fire in the stove.
She wants to cook.
1 - Did the boys eat already?
2 - No, they want to eat right away.
1 - How about you? Do you want to eat, too?
2 - No, I ate already. I want to work right away / right now.
- E) 1 - What do you (plural) want to do today?
(page 99) 2 - We want to write.
1 - Us, too.
2 - Where are the pencils / pens?
1 - There beside the book.
2 - Please, bring them here!
1 - You too, sit down here!
2 - Put your books here!
3. What are the children doing?
(page 99) Where is the clock?
What is the woman doing?
Is/ are the man and boy eating?
Where are the shoes?

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Did the woman make a fire already?

Are the girls going to be full soon?

Where is the lamp?

What is the boy doing?

What is the dog doing?

4. What are you doing now?

(page 99) What is your name?

Where do you come from?

Do you want to eat?

Do you want to sing?

Do you (plural) want to sleep?

Were you (plural) sick the day before yesterday?

What are you (plural) doing today?

Are / will you (plural) be leaving the day after tomorrow?

Are you (plural) making a fire?

Exercise E

In the Forest (page 101)

1. Skunk

2. Baby skunk

3. Moose

4. Baby moose

5. Bear

6. Baby bear

7. Rabbit

8. Baby rabbit

9. Beaver

10. Baby beaver

11. Caribou

12. Baby caribou

13. Goose

14. Baby goose

15. Bird

16. Baby bird

17. Wolf

18. Baby wolf

19. Fox

20. Baby fox

2.

Chair

Small chair

Spoon

Small spoon

Bannock

Small bannock

(page 102)

Book

Small book

Plate

Small plate

Fish

Small fish (minnow)

Dog

Small dog (pup)

Window

Small window

Cradleboard

Small cradleboard

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

3.	a. skunk	g. canoe	m. fork	s. salt
(page 102)	b. beaver	h. goose	n. bear	t. chair
	c. lard	i. plate	o. knife	u. duck
	d. moose	j. bed	p. cup	v. wolf
	e. caribou	k. fish	q. rabbit	w. cradleboard
	f. pail / bucket	l. dog	r. window	x. lamp

4. Done in text by student.

5. Done in text by student.

Exercise F

TA Verbs (page 105)

- | | | |
|----|----------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. | I see a moose. | I see a cradleboard. |
| | Do you see a goose? | Do you see a hat? |
| | I see a bear cub. | I see a small chair. |
| | Do you see a rabbit? | Do you see the caribou-meat? |
| | I see a beaver. | I see a book. |

Note: #2/3 are done in text.

- | | | |
|----|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 4. | I am eating a rabbit. | I am eating meat. |
| | Are you eating a bear? | Are you eating porridge. |
| | I am eating fish. | I am eating a potato. |
| | Are you eating a caribou? | Are you eating lard? |

- 1) I am eating. 2). I am eating (animate). 3. I am eating (inanimate).

5. 1). Do you see (animate)?
 Do you see (inanimate)?
 2). Are you eating (animate)?
 Are you eating (inanimate)?

6. I am eating.
 (page 106) I see him/her.
 Bring something (animate).
 I am eating something (animate).
 I see it (inanimate).
 Bring something (inanimate).
 I am eating something (inanimate).
 I am working.
 Sit down.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise G How is the weather? (VII)

- (page 107)
- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------------------|
| It is windy. | It is thundering. |
| It is cold. | There are northern lights. |
| It is hot. | It is foggy. |
| It is snowing. | It is calm. |
| It is a sunny day. | It is overcast, is bad weather. |
| It is raining. | It is cloudy. |

Exercise H

- (page 108)
- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| I see something animate. | I am eating something animate. |
| I see something inanimate. | I am eating something inanimate. |
| I'm looking for something animate. | I am thinking of something animate. |
| I'm looking for something inanimate. | I am thinking of something inanimate. |
| I like the taste of something animate. | I am killing something animate. |
| I like the taste of something inanimate. | I am killing something inanimate. |
4. (page 109)
- | | |
|---|--|
| A) 1 - Where are you going?
2 - I am going home.
1 - What for? or what about?
2 - I am sick. | B) 1 - What do you want?
2 - I don't want anything.
1 - Why not?
2 - I want to sleep. |
| C) 1 - Do you want to sleep?
2 - No.
1 - Why not?
2 - I am thinking about my friend. | D) 1 - How is the weather?
2 - Snowing.
1 - Do you want to go outside?
2 - No, I want to sleep. |
| E) 1 - Where are you (plural) going?
2 - We (exclusive) are going home.
1 - How come?
2 - We (exclusive) want to eat and we really want to sleep. | |
| F) 1 - Look! It's snowing now.
2 - Do you want to play outside?
1 - No, I am leaving.
2 - Oh yeah! Where are you going?
1 - Far away in the bush. I want to look for a rabbit.
2 - So did you see a rabbit yesterday?
1 - Yes, I saw one only. | |
| G) 1 - Did you see a moose the day before yesterday.
2 - Yes, I saw him.
1 - Where?
2 - Over there close to the woods.
1 - Did you kill the moose?
2 - Yes. Do you like the taste of the moose?
1 - Say it again!
2 - Do you like the taste of moose-meat?
1 - Yes, I like the taste of it very much. | |

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Lesson 3:

Obviative

(page 112)

- | | | |
|----|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1) | I am eating fish. | I am eating meat. |
| | You are eating fish. | You are eating meat. |
| | H/she's eating fish. | H/she's eating meat. |
| | | |
| | I see a skunk. | I see a house. |
| | You see a skunk. | You see a house. |
| | H/she sees a skunk. | H/she sees a house. |

2) VTA Verbs:

(page 113)

I am eating a goose.
You are eating a goose.
H/she's eating a goose.
We are eating a goose (exclusive)
We are eating a goose (inclusive).
You (plural) are eating a goose.
They are eating a goose.

I see a fox.
You see a fox.
H/she sees a fox.
We see a fox. (exclusive)
We see a fox. (inclusive)
You (plural) see a fox.
They see a fox.

VTI Verbs:

I am eating lard.	I see a gun.
You are eating lard.	You see a gun.
H/she's eating lard.	H/she sees a gun.
We're eating lard (exclusive)	We see a gun. (exclusive)
We're eating lard. (inclusive)	We see a gun. (inclusive)
You (plural) are eating lard.	You (plural) see a gun.
They are eating lard.	They see a gun.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise B

3. A) 1 - Where do you(plural) want to go today?
2 - We want to go in the woods / bush.
(page 116) 1 - When are you (plural) going to leave?
2 - We want to leave right away.
1 - What are you (plural) going to do over there?
2 - We want to hunt only.
1 - Maybe it is possible that you (plural) will kill a moose.
2 - I hope so.
- B) 1 - Listen! Someone is arriving now.
2 - Where?
1 - Outside the door / at the door.
2 - What for, are you afraid?
1 - Yes, I am afraid. Bring the gun, hurry!
2 - No, I'm not afraid.
1 - Why don't you look outside!
2 - Okay.
1 - Do you see someone?
2 - No, I only see a dog.

Exercise C

(page 116)

Possession;

- | | | |
|---------------|-------------|-----------------|
| 1. My gun | my house | my tent |
| Your gun | your house | you tent |
| h/her gun | h/her house | h/her tent |
| my canoe | my fish | my partridge |
| your canoe | your fish | your partirdge |
| h/her canoe | h/her fish | h/her partridge |
| my bannock | my knife | my tea-pot |
| your bannock | your knife | your tea-pot |
| h/her bannock | h/her knife | h/her tea-pot |
| my spoon | my plate | my milk |
| your spoon | your plate | you milk |
| h/her spoon | h/her plate | h/her milk |

5. Where is my porridge?
(page 117) H/she wants my gun.
What is your dog's name:
Bring your axe!
Do you see John's house?
Where is your pencil / pen?
I gave him his partridge.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise D

(page 118)

- | | | |
|------------|-----------|-----------|
| 4. sweater | 7. scarf | 1. mitten |
| 2. coat | 9. sock | 3. pants |
| 6. hat | 10. shirt | 8. belt |
| 5. blouse | | |

Exercise E

(page 119)

- A). Dog! I want my shoe! Hurry, bring it!
- B). Do you want to go with Peter? He's looking for a caribou.
- C). H/she wanted a knife, so I gave it to him/her.
- D). The girl is not helping the woman. She's sleeping already.
- E). I will help the boy tomorrow. The day after tomorrow, too.
- F). They did not see the moose. They only saw a man.
- G). Are you (plural) looking for a canoe?
- H). Do you (plural) want to eat moose-meat?
No, we want to eat the skunk. They were afraid.
- J). My dog ate the rabbit.

Exercise F

1. A)
(page 120)

- Did you (plural) help the man?
- Were they hunting?
- Did the fox see the partridge?
- Where is the airplane?
- Do you (plural) like the taste of bannock?
- Do you (plural) want to go with Frank?
- Did you give him/her the moose-meat?

(page 120)

- B). 1 - What is he/she going to do tomorrow?
- 2 - H/she wants to leave tomorrow. H/she is ready now.
- 1 - Where is h/she going to go?
- 2 - Far away in the bush.
- 1 - Will you be going with h/her?
- 2 - Yes, probably I'll be going with h/her.
- 1 - Do you want to come along too?
- 2 - No.

(page 120)

- C). 1 - Where is Henry?
- 2 - He left already.
- 1 - When?
- 2 - The day before yesterday.
- 1 - Where did he go?
- 2 - He is hunting in the bush.
- 1 - Is he alone? / Go by himself?
- 2 - No, he went with his dog.
- 1 - How about the boy? Did he go, too?
- 2 - No, he is still sleeping.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise G

(page 121)

Kinship:

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1. my grandfather | me, I |
| my grandmother | my spouse, companion |
| my father | my younger sister |
| my mother | my younger brother |
| my older brother | my son |
| my older sister | my daughter |

(page 121) 1). What is your grandfather's name?

Peter is my grandfather's name?

2). What is your grandmother's name?

Mary is my grandmother's name.

3). What is your father's name?

Jacob is my father's name.

4). What is your mother's name?

Sarah is my mother's name.

5). What is your son's name?

Thomas is my son's name.

6). What is your daughter's name?

Emily is my daughter's name.

4. What is your older brother doing outside? (outdoors)

(page 124) I don't know. Maybe he is working.

What is your older sister doing inside? (indoors)

She is cooking. She is hungry.

What is your spouse going to do tomorrow?

He/she is going to work in the bush.

What is your father going to do today?

He wants to go hunting.

What did your mother do yesterday?

She made a fire outside. She cooked.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise I (page 126)

1 on 2

I see you.
I'm looking for you.
I help you.
I accompany you.

1 on 3

I see him/her.
I'm looking for h/her.
I help h/her.
I accompany him/her.

2 on 1

You see me.
You're looking for me.
You help me.
You accompany me.

2 on 3

You see h/her.
You're looking for h/her.
You help him/her.
You accompany him/her.

3 on 1

H/she sees me.
H/she's looking for me.
H/she helps me.
H/she accompanys me.

3 on 2

H/she sees you.
H/she's looking for you.
H/she helps you.
H/she accompanys you.

3 on 4

H/she sees him/her.
H/she's looking for him/her.
H/she's helping him/her.
H/she accompanys him/her.

Transforming some TA combinations: (page 128)

Present (4 on 3)
He helps her.

Negative
He doesn't help her.

Past
He helped her.

Present (2 on 3)
You are eating (animate)

Negative
You are not eating (animate)

Past
You ate (animate)

Present (3 on 1)
He sees me.

Negative
He doesn't see me.

Past
He saw me.

Present (3 on 4)
He like the taste of
(animate)

Negative
He doesn't like the taste of
(animate)

Past
He liked the taste of
(animate)

Present (1 on 2)
I accompany you.

Voluntative
I want to accompany you.

Future
I will accompany you.

Present (3 on 2)
He gives you.

Voluntative
He wants to give you.

Future
He will give you.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Verb Stems:

(page 129)

See / to see

help / to help

accompany / to accompany

give / to give

want / to want

love / to love

keep / to keep

forget / to forget

Comic Strips

1. I am leaving:

(page 130)

1st Caption

Where are you going? I'm going to Thunder Bay.

Is Alec going with you?

Yes, he's going with me / he wants to see Richard.

Where is Richard? He's in Thunder Bay, already.

Are you going to see Sally?

Probably I'll see her.

Can you give her this book please?

Okay, I'll give it to her if I see her.

Thank you!

Where is my friend?

2nd Caption

Where is Gordon?

I don't see him.

Now, I see him over there. Where?

Over there, do you see him now?

Now, I see him in the canoe.

Romance:

3rd Caption

I love you. Oh, he loves me.

I love you lots; how about you, do you love me?

Yes, I love you, too!

Chief and counselor:

4th Caption

The boss is looking for you.

Oh my! Is he looking for me?

Are you sure?

Yes, hurry! He wants to see you right away.

I'm afraid! Please come with me!

No, he wants to see you only.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Lesson 4

Exercise A

(page 131)

- | | | |
|----|----------------|------------------|
| 1. | lake (s) | gun(s) |
| | falls / rapids | river(s) |
| | pond | hill(s) |
| | paddle(s) | motor(engine)(s) |
| | lunch box(s) | wilderness |
| | island(s) | mountain |

2. Where are the fish?
(page 132) Over there at the rapids / falls.

What is Peter doing in the wilderness?
He is looking for a partridge.

What is the beaver doing in the pond?
He is looking for the river.

What is over there in the lake?
An island.

Where is the lake?
There by the river.

Where are you going?
By the river!

Do you see a caribou on top of the hill!
Yes, I see him/her.

Are you looking for an eagle near the mountain?
No, I'm looking for a bear cub.

Where is my gun? I want to kill a wolf.
Your gun is not here.

Where is my lunch-box? I want to eat!
There on top of the table.

Do you want my paddle?
No, not yet. Later on tomorrow.

How about your motor? Do you want it?
Yes, I want it right away/right now.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise C

(page 134)

- A). 1 - Where is my gun? I want to go hunting.
2 - Where do you want to go?
1 - There by the hill.
2 - Is your dog going along with you?
1 - Yes.
2 - How about your son? Is he going with you, too?
1 - No, he still wants to sleep some more.
- B). 1 - Where is my lunch-box?
2 - I don't know, what about it?
1 - I want to go.
2 - Oh yeah! Do you want to look for an animal?
1 - Yes, I want to look for animals.
2 - Is your daughter going along with you?
1 - Yes, she wants to see the animals too.
2 - Okay, I'll see you later on.
- C). 1 - Hurry, bring the gun!
2 - What for?
1 - I see something over there!
2 - Where? I don't see anything.
1 - Come over here! Do you see it? It's a moose!
2 - Do you want to shoot him/her?
1 - No, you shot him!

Exercise D (page 135)

Note: Explained in text.

Exercise E

Note: Done in text by the student.

Exercise G (page 138)

- | | | |
|----|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 2. | 1. I am sick. | I seem to be sick. |
| | 2. You are sick. | You must be sick. |
| | 3. H/she is sick. | H/she must be sick. |
| | 13. We are sick. (exclusive) | We must be sick. |
| | 21. We are sick. (inclusive) | We seem to be sick. |
| | 22. You (plural) are sick. | You (plural) must be sick. |
| | 33. They are sick. | They must be sick. |

(page 138) What is your older brother doing?
What is your older sister doing?
What is your spouse doing?
What is your younger sibling doing?

He must be hunting.
She must be driving off.
She must be cooking.
He must be playing.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

2. Where is the native woman? She must be leaving.
(page 139) Where is the white man?
Where is your son?
Where is Susan's husband?
Where is my older brother?
Where is your younger sibling?
Where is Peter's older sister?
Where is the dog?

Exercise H (page 140)

1. A. 1 - Where is your older brother?
2 - I don't know. He must be working outside.
1 - My older sister is looking for your older brother.
2 - What for ?
1 - I don't know. Maybe she wants to go with him.
2 - How about you? Where do you want to go?
1 - I want to go home. I want to eat.
- B. 1 - Where is your younger sibling?
2 - H/she must still be sleeping.
1 - What will you be doing today?
2 - I'll go looking for the partridges.
1 - Where? In the woods / bush?
2 - No? Over there by the lake.
1 - I'll come along too.

Exercise I (page 141)

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. H/she is working. | 2. H/she speaks the native language. |
| 3. It is called... | 4. H/she is cooking. |
| 5. H/she is afraid. | 6. H/she is leaving. |
| 7. H/she is writing. | 8. H/she is dancing. |
| 9. H/she is singing. | 10. H/she is crying. |
| 11. H/she enters (comes in) | 12. He/she is sleeping. |
| 13. It is cold (weather). | 14. H/she speaks English. |
| 15. There is Northern Lights. | |

Exercise J (page 142)

- 1). What is the boy doing?
- 2). What is your dog doing?
- 3). What does the white person want to do?
- 4). What does the child want to do?
- 5). How is the weather outside?

Lesson 5

1.	It is night	moon	star	sun.
	It is day	sun rise	sun sets	(1) tell news (2) tell legend

2. A) 1 - It is night now, go to sleep!
(page 143) 2 - No, I don't want to go sleep yet.
I want to play more.
1 - You will be getting up early tomorrow morning.
2 - What for?
1 - You will be going to work tomorrow.
- B). 1 - Do you see the moon?
2 - No. Where?
1 - There far away beside the star.
2 - Where?
I don't see it. (animate)
I only see a partridge.
- C). 1 - The sun is rising now, get up!
2 - What for? I want to sleep more.
1 - You will start working soon.
2 - I don't want to work today.
I feel sick. Tell my boss.
1 - No. You tell him.

(page 145)

1. Tell news and tell legends.

Verbs: tell news. Tell legends.

Nouns: News. Legends

- ## 2. Some examples:

(page 145)

- A). Okay, I will tell a short story.
Long ago, once during the summer,
I was hunting/looking for moose.
Soon I saw a baby moose/calf.
I didn't shoot him. He/she was too small.
- B). Okay, I will tell a short story about legend.
Long ago, once there was this legend.
His name was Cahkaapehsh.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

He was always causing problems.
He was always trying to win.
"I know everything," he thought.
He was always competing.
He was always after the women too.
He never did win.
He was always losing.
That is all for now.
I will tell a legend again tomorrow.

Dialogues in which the preterit is used:

(page 146)

3. A). Where is your brother?
He must have gone alone.
Do you usually go with him?
We usually always go hunting.
Now I don't go with him anymore.
- B). Did you want to eat?
Yes, it has been a long time since I ate.
Look in the stove. There was meat in there yesterday.
Somebody must have eaten it up.
- C). Where is your knife?
I don't know, I must have lost it the day before yesterday.
I used to like it.

Reading and Writing Practice:

(page 146)

4. He built the fire there beside the lake.
Native women were cooking.
Did you write?
He/she already drove away.
We (inclusive) were angry.
Did you laugh?

Exercise E Note: This exercise will be done in the text. Corrections will be done by the instructor.

(page 148)

Exercise F

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| A). opiniish | B). abwewinish |
| zhiiwitaaganish | akikosh |
| nitiwakikosh | giigoowish |
| zhiishiibish | onaaganish |
| okaadaakosh | waazakonenjiganish |
| animoshish | opwaaganish |
| dikinaaganish | abaabika'iganish |

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise G Note: Corrections will be done by the instructor.

Exercise H

(page 151)

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. in the bush | 7. along the shore |
| 2. swamp | 8. portage |
| 3. bridge | 9. across the lake or river |
| 4. peninsula | 10. rocky island |
| 5. across the river | 11. at the bay |
| 6. dock | 12. island |

Exercise I Note: Corrections will be done by the instructor.

Exercise J Note: Corrections will be done by the instructor.

Lesson 6, Review Lessons:

Exercise A - Twenty Four Articles:

(page 153)

onaagan	bakwezhiganikaan
minikwaajigan	bine
mookomaan	waaboos
emikwaan	wiiyaas
badaka'igan	napenh
zhiiwitaagan	waawan
wiisagad	doodooshaaboo
bimide	giigoo
nibi	bagishkiboojiganaaboo
nitiiwakik	opin
akik	okaadaak
abwewin	zhiishiib

Exercise B - Numbers:

(page 153)

bezhig	midaaswi ashi niswi
niizhin	midaaswi ashi niiwin
niswi	midaaswi ashi naanan
niiwin	midaaswi ashi ningodwaaswi
naanan	midaaswi ashi niizhwaaswi
ningodwaaswi	midaaswi ashi nishwaaswi
niizhwaaswi	midaaswi ashi zhaangaswi
nishwaasw	niishtana
zhaangaswi	niishtana ashi bezhig
midaaswi	niishtana ashi niizhin
midaaswi ashi bezhig	niishtana ashi niswi
midaaswi ashi niizhin	niishtana ashi niiwin

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise C

(page 154)

Using Numbers in Verb Forms:

VAI

Bezhigo waabooz
Niizhiwag binewag.
Nisiwag giigooyag.
Niiwiwag emikwaanag
Naananiwag okaadaakwag.
Ningodwaasiwag bakwezhiiganikaanag.
Niizhwaasiwag akikwag.
Nishwaasiwag zhiishiibag.
Zhaangasowag nitiiwakikoog.
Midaasiwag abwewinag.

VII

Bezhigwan waawan.
Niizhinoon onaaganan.
Nisinoon mookomaanan.
Niiwinoon badaka'iganan.
Naananinoon waawanooon.
Ningodwaasinoon dikinaaganan.
Niizhwaasinoon bimiden.
Nishwaasinoon wiiyaasan.
Zhaangaswinoon doodooshaaboon.
Midaasinoon zhiwitaaganan.

Exercise D

(page 154)

May I Introduce Myself?

Eya
Gaawiin
Miigwech
Aan ezhinikaazoyan?
Nidizhinikaaz
Aandi wenjiiyan?
Nidoonjii.
Geniin
Giin dash wiin?
Miinawaa ikidon!
Bekaa ikidon!
Ginisidotaan ina?
Eya, ninisidotaan.
Gaawiin, gaawiin ninisidotanziin.
Wegonen awe?
Awenen awe?
Aan ezhinikaazod?
_____izhinikaazo.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise E

(page 155)

Imperatives:

1. 1. Biindigen!
2. Niibawin!
3. Maajaan!
4. Giiwen!
5. Nibaan!
6. Abin!
7. Biizhaan!
8. Boodawen!
9. Nagamon!
10. Wanishkaan!

Locatives:

(page 155)

2. gizhaabikiziganing
ishkwaandeming
apabiwining
waasechiganing
adoopowining
nibaaganing

ombaasining
jiimaaning
waakaa'iganing
odaabaaning
babagiwayaanigamigong
zaaga'iganiing

Exercise F

(page 156)

Intransitive Verbs:

nagamo
aakozi
boodawe

gizhiwaazi
giiwe
jiibaakwe

nibaa
niimi
anokii

wiisini
debi-wiisini (OR debisinii)
odamino

Exercise G

(page 156)

Aan ezhiseg / endaso-diba'iganeg?

Bezhigo-	diba'igane
Niizho-	diba'igane
Niso-	diba'igane
Niiyo-	diba'igane
Naano-	diba'igane
Ningodwaaso-	diba'igane
Niizhwaahso-	diba'igane
Nishwaaso-	diba'igane
Zhaangaso-	diba'igane
Midaaso-	diba'igane
Midaaso- ashi bezhig	diba'igane
Midaaso- ashi niizhin	diba'igane

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise H

What Are They Doing?

(page 157)

ikwe	inini	abinoojii	gwiiwizens	ikwezens
ikwewag	ininiwag	abinoojiyag	gwiiwizensag	ikwezensag

Amanj igo.

Aan endoodaman?

Aan endoodamaan?

Aan endoodang?

Aan endoodamowaad?

Aan endoodameg?

Aan endoodamang?

Aan waa-doodaman?

Aan waa-doodamaan?

Aan waa-doodang?

Aan waa-doodamowaad?

Aan waa-doodameg?

Aan ezhinikaazod?

Aan ezhinihkaadeg?

Gagwejim!

Wiindamaw!

Exercise I

Voluntatives

(page 157)

1. Niwii-minikwe nibi.

Gegiin na giwii-minikwe nibi?

Inini wii-anokii noongom gii-giizhigak.

Wii-anokii noongom gii-giizhigak.

Wii-boodawe agwajiing.

Gaawiin, gaawiin niwii-odaminosii.

Abinoojiyag dash wiin. Wii-odaminowag ina?

Giwii-kiwem ina?

(page 158)

2. Nidani-giwe noongom gii-giizhigak.

Gigii-anokii na bijiinaago?

Da-ani-maajaa waabang.

Gigii-nibaam bijiinaago.

Wiiba da-niimiwag.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise J

Vocabulary:

(page 159)

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. Animosh | Waagaakwad |
| Makizin | Waazakonenjigan |
| Mazina'igan | Jiishta'igan |
| Dikinaagan | Aabaabika'igan |
| Ozhibii'iganaak | Opwaagan |
| Waaboyaan | Apikweshimon |

First Person Plural:

(page 159)

- | | |
|--------------|--------------------|
| 2. Gigiwemin | Nidoozhibii'igemin |
| Giwiisinimin | Ninibaamin |
| Giboodawemin | Nidoodaminomin |
| Gidaakozimin | Nimaajaamin |

Diminutives:

(page 159)

- | | | | |
|-------------|----------|--------------|--------------|
| 3. zhigaag | amik | ma'iingan | zhiishiib |
| zhigaagoons | amikoons | ma'iinganens | zhiishiibens |

Exercise K

Transitive Verbs:

(page 160)

1. Niwaabamaa ikwe.
Gidandawenimaa na animosh?
Ninanaandawenimaa gwiiwizens.
Gidamwaa giigoo.
- Giwaabandaan ina ombaasin?
Nidandawendaan mazina'igan.
Kinanaandawaabandaan ina mookomaan?
Nimiijin moozo-wiyyaas.

How is the Weather?

(page 160)

- | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| 2. a). noodin | e). waawaate | i). gashkawan |
| b). dakaayaa | f). animikiikaa | j). anwaatin |
| c). gizhide | g). gimiwan | k). ningwakwad |
| d). zoogipon | h). waashekwan | l). maazhi-giizhigad |

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Some Useful Expressions:

(page 160)

3. Wegonen?

Wegonen andawendaman?

Wegonen dash?

Aan dash?

Aanti ezhaayan?

Aanti ezhaayeg?

Aan ezhiwebak?

Aan enakamigak?

Aapiji.

Exercise L

Obviatives:

(page 161)

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------|
| 1. Nidamwaa giigoo. | Nimijjin wiyaas. |
| Gidamwaa giigoo. | Gimijjin wiyaas. |
| Odamwaan giigooyan. | Omiijjin wiyaas. |

Third Person Only:

(page 161)

2. Owaabamaan binewan.
Ominopwaan makwan.
Onanaandawaabamaan nikan.
Ogiizhizwaan zhigaagoon.
Odandawenimaan emikwaan.
Ozaagi'aan animoshan.
Oganawenimaan nisayenyan.
- Omiijjin waawan.
Owaabandaan waahkaahikanini.
Ominopodaan wiyaas.
Onanaandawaapandaan bimide.
Ogiizhizaan opin.
Ozaagitoon doodaashaaboo.
Oganawendaan jiimaan.

Exercise M

Possessive Nouns:

(page 162)

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Nidapabiwin | Niwaawanooman |
| Gidoozhibii'iganaak | Gidishkwaandeman |
| Onitiim | Onapenyan |
| Nidiba'igiiziswaan | Nibadaka'iganan |
| Ginitiiwakik | Gimookomaanan |
| Ominikwaajiganan | Obakwezhiganikaanan |

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Vocabulary:

2. giishkijiiwayaan	babagiwayaan	azhigan
wiiwakwaan	gichipizon	minjikaawan
bikwan	giboodiyegwaazon	biiskawaagan
giizhoopizon		

My Family:

3. nimishoomis	niin	nishiime
nookomis	niwiiijiwaagan	nishiime
nibaabaa	nimisenh	nigozis
nimaamaa	nisayenh	nidaan

Exercise N

More about TA Verbs:

(1 acting on 2)

means a first person (1) NIIN is doing something to a second person (2) GIIN.

(1 acting on 2)	(1 acting on 3)	(2 acting on 1)
giwaabamin	niwaabamaa	giwaapam
ginanaandawaabamin	ninanaandawaabamaa	ginanaandawaapam
giwiji'in	niwiji'aa	giwiji'
giwijiwin	niwijiwaa	giwijiw
(2 acting on 3)	(3 acting on 1)	(3 acting on 2)
giwaabamaa	niwaabamig	giwaabamig
ginanaandawaabamaa	ninanaandawaabamig	ginanaandawaabamig
giwiji'aa	niwiji'ig	giwiji'ig
giwijiwaa	niwijiwig	giwijiwig
(3 acting on 4)		
owabaamaan		
onanaandawaabamaan		
owiji'aan		
owijiwaan		

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise O

(page 164)

Scenery and Useful Articles:

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Zaaga'igan | Baashkizigan |
| Baawitig | Ziibi |
| Waanzhibiyyaa | Bikwadinaa |
| Abwi | Maajiinikaajiganens |
| Nawapowini-makakoons | Noopiming |
| Minis | Wajiw |

Vocabulary and Expressions:

(page 164)

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 2. izhinikaade | zhaaganaashikwe |
| izhinikaazo | anishinaabemo |
| anishinaabe | zhaaganaashiimo |
| anishinaabekwe | zhaaganash |

Certain and Uncertain:

(page 164)

- | | |
|-----------|------------|
| 3. aakozi | odaminodog |
| anokii | aakozidog |
| anokiidog | nibaadog |

Exercise P

Moon and Sun:

(page 165)

- | | |
|---------------|-----------|
| 1. dibikad | giizis |
| dibiki-giizis | zaagaate |
| giizhigad | dibaajimo |
| anang | aadizooke |
| bangishimon | |

Preterits:

(page 165)

2. Ningii-izhaaminaaban endaso-niibing.
Gii-wiidigeban naano-bibooning.
Ningii-giishpinadoonaaban waakaa'igan.

Pejorative:

(page 165)

- | | | |
|----------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| 3. apabiwinish | nibaaganish | jimaanish |
| onaaganish | makizinish | babagiwayaanegamigosh |

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise Q

(page 165)

Geographical Terms:

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 1. noopiming | jiigew |
| mashkiig | gakiwe |
| aazhogan | agaaming |
| neyaashiiwan | minisaabik |
| agaami-ziibiing | niminaaweyaandawaagan |
| | wiikwedong |

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

A. Nominals

Animate Nouns:

legend	sun, moon, month	my daughter, his daughter
child	boy	my dog, his dog
paddle	woman	my older brother, his older brother
beaver	girl	my younger sibling, his younger sibling
star	man	my companion
dog	wolf	my grandmother, his grandmother
native person	bear	pipe
native woman	mitten	pencil
sock	moose	White person
bird	my father, his father	White woman
clock	my son, his son	fox
moon	my mother, his mother	White person
pants	my older sister, his older sister	white woman
scarf	my grandfather, his grandfather	skunk

Inanimate Nouns:

lock	calendar	blouse
dock	broom	blanket
pillow	boat motor	axe
gun	shoe	window
falls, rapids	swamp	lamp
shirt	book	mountain
wilderness	island	hat
coat	rock island	lake
story	lunch box	river
cradleboard	dock	
belt	airplane	
sweater	portage	

Pronouns:

we/us (exc.)	we/us (inc.)	you (pl.)	they, them
we/us too (exc.)	we/us too (inc.)	you too (pl.)	they, them too
someone	first		

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

B. Verbs

Animate Intransitive Verbs:

tell a legend	be cold	play
speak native language	be named	write
live	start off	get ready
split wood	cry	speak English
arrive	drink	go out
tell a story	hunt	speak English
portage	fetch water	

Inanimate Intransitive Verbs:

be thundering	portage	be cloudy
be calm	be foggy	be cloudy
be foggy	be a day	wind
be clouds coming this way	rain	be a pond
be the setting sun	be hot	be bright out, shiny
be a hill	be named	be
arrive	be unpleasant weather	northern lights
be cold	come up (sun)	be a clear sky
be night	be a point of land	be snowing

Transitive Aimate Verbs:

I put him in a container.	I like the taste of him.
I eat him.	I look around for him.
I look for him	I kill him.
I need/want him	I see him.
I take care of him	I help him.
I cook him	I go with him.
I worry about him	I love him.
I give it to him	I tell him.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Transitive Inanimate Verbs:

I put it in a container.	I am worried about it.	I kill it.
I look for it.	I think about it.	I see it.
I need/want it.	I eat it.	I forget about it.
I take care of it.	I like the taste of it.	I help it.
I cook it.	I look around for it.	I like it
I am worried.		

C. Particles

on the other side of the lake	after a while	in the bush, inland
I wish	yesterday	tomorrow
the day before yesterday	please, let me	what about? what for?
the day after tomorrow	soon	what?
when?	along the shore	long ago
how, why	look!	soon, hurry
why not?	in a while	at the bay
very, quite	now	

D. Preverbs

go and (do)	try	start, begin
away from, in progress towards	big, great	in the distance
about, here and there	secretly	good at, habitually
in this direction, to here	after, complete	need to do (before usual time)
stop	before	in error, by mistake
enough	unable to	want to

E. Expressions

I don't know	What do you want to do? (pl.)
What are you doing?	What's his name?
What am I doing?	What's it called?
What is he/she doing?	How's the weather?
What are they doing?	What's happening?
What are you doing? (pl.)	How many are they?
What are we doing?	Why not?
What do you want to do?	How much?
What do I want to do?	Where are you going?
What does he/she want to do?	Why is it not so?
What do they want to do?	Where are you going? (pl.)
What do you want/need?	Oops! Oh my!
What about/what for?	Yuck!
Ask him.	
Tell him.	

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE GLOSSARY

Guide to the Glossaries

This section is divided into two parts: Anishinaabemowin-English Glossary, and English-Anishinaabemowin Glossary. The glossaries contains listings of basic words (word stems) and some prefixes. In order to make the glossaries more useful we will explain the way that entries are organized and the information they contain. We will treat the Anishinaabemowin-English and English-Anishinaabemowin sections separately, because they are organized differently.

The glossaries are intended only to be a listing of words used in this book. Because there are often local variations in pronunciation and vocabulary, students are encouraged to make notes in the glossaries about aspects of the usage and vocabulary of their instructor which are not already indicated there. As well, the glossaries do not present detailed information about all the possible different forms which many Anishinaabemowin words may take, especially nouns and verbs.

There are many Anishinaabemowin words which do not appear in the glossaries. Students are encouraged to check with their instructor for words they are interested in. Although there is no published dictionary which focusses on the dialect of Anishinaabemowin being studied in this book, students may find it helpful to consult *A Concise Dictionary of Minnesota Ojibwe* by John Nichols and Early Nyholm (University of Minnesota Press, 1995). An inexpensive paperback edition is readily available. The vocabulary used in that publication is similar to that being studied here. It is advisable to check with your instructor about words you are interested in.

In both sections the following alphabetic order is used for Anishinaabemowin words, in which long vowels are sorted after the corresponding short vowels:

a	aa	b	d	e	g	'	i	ii	j	k	m	n
o	oo	p	s	sh	t	w	y	z	zh			

ANISHINAABEMOWIN-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

In the Anishinaabemowin-English section, each entry contains at least an Anishinaabemowin HEAD WORD, an abbreviation for the WORD CLASS code, and an English translation, as in the following entry. Notice that the Anishinaabemowin head word is in **bold print**, the word class code is in SMALL CAPS type, and the English translation is in plain type.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE GLOSSARY

giwe VAI go home, return

Each Anishinaabemowin word is assigned a word class code. A complete list of all word class codes is found on page 213. We will review examples of each type, and will explain the types of information which may be found in entries for different word classes. A complete list of all word class codes appears at the end of this section.

Nouns

There are two main types of nouns, ANIMATE and INANIMATE. Their word class codes are as follows.

NA animate noun

NI inanimate noun

Typical entries for each are given here.

emikwaan -ag NA spoon

minikwaajigan -an NI cup

The head word for a noun is usually the SINGULAR form of the noun. PREFIXES and SUFFIXES may be added to this form to give extra meaning and grammatical information. The head word for a noun is followed by the form of the PLURAL suffix that the noun takes. This suffix can be added directly to the head word (minus the hyphen) to make the plural form. So for example, the entry for the noun **emikwaan** 'spoon' given above contains the plural suffix **-ag**. They can be combined to give the plural form **emikwaanag** 'spoons.'

There are also two other types of nouns, which are called DEPENDENT nouns. Their word class codes are as follows.

NAD dependent animate noun

NID dependent inanimate noun

Dependent nouns are nouns that must always occur with a POSSESSIVE prefix to indicate who the noun belongs to (the 'possessor'). Dependent nouns are nearly always words for body parts or kinship terms. In this book there are no terms for body parts included, so we will not discuss them further. In the glossary dependent nouns for kinship terms are always given in the form in which the basic word

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE GLOSSARY

is preceded by the first-person prefix **ni** or **n**.

nimaamaa -yag NAD my mother. Stem: /-maamaay-/.

The head word is the prefixed form that means 'my mother.' You will see that after the English translation appears the notation '*Stem* /-maamaay-/.' The form that is given in angled brackets is called the **STEM**. It is the basic form of the word without any prefixes or suffixes. This is the form of the word that is used when you wish to make other forms of this word by adding prefixes or suffixes. For many glossary entries the head word and the stem are identical, so the entry does not need to give any special indication of what the stem is. As with dependent nouns, we will see that other types of words may contain information indicating that the stem is slightly different from the head word.

There are also a small number of entries that have the following class code.

NI-PT inanimate noun with participle

One of the words that means 'airplane' belongs to this word class.

gaa-ombaasing NI-PT airplane. Also **ombaasin**.

Words of this type are nouns which are based upon verbs.

Verbs

Apart from nouns, there are several different types of **VERBS**. We will first discuss the two main types of **INTRANSITIVE VERBS**. **ANIMATE INTRANSITIVE** verbs are those that have an animate grammatical **SUBJECT** but no **OBJECT**. Their word class codes are as follows.

VAI	animate intransitive verb
VAI2	animate intransitive verb
VAI+O	animate intransitive verb + object

The head word for any animate intransitive verb is usually the **THIRD-PERSON** singular form, that is, the one that means 'he/she is...' Such forms have no prefix or suffix on the head entry.

Here is a typical entry for an animate intransitive (**VAI**) verb.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE GLOSSARY

anokii VAI work

The class of animate intransitive verbs referred to as VAI2 are very similar to animate intransitive verbs of the VAI class. Here is the entry for a typical example.

doodam VAI2 do in a certain way.

The entry for a verb of the *vai2* class will always have a head word that ends in **am**. The glossary contains only a few words of this class.

There is one other type of animate intransitive verb, referred to as VAI+O. Verbs of this class resemble ordinary verbs of the VAI class, but frequently occur with a grammatical object. There are not many verbs of this type, and only a few are used in this book. Here is an entry for a verb of this type.

minikwe VAI+O drink s.t.

INANIMATE INTRANSITIVE verbs are those that have a grammatically inanimate subject but no grammatical object. There is only one word class code for inanimate intransitive verbs.

VII inanimate intransitive verb

The head word for any inanimate intransitive verb is usually the third-person singular form, that is, the one that means 'it is...'. Such forms have no prefix or suffix on the head entry.

Here is a typical entry for an inanimate intransitive (VII) verb.

ate VII be there, be in a certain place. Also **atemagad**.

Some animate intransitive verbs, particularly verbal forms of numbers, always occur in a plural form. In the glossary the head entry is the third-person plural form (the form that means 'they...'). As a result the head entry consists of the basic verb stem and the third-person plural suffix, usually **wag**. The stem is identified between diagonal slashes. Here is an example.

nisiwag VAI be three of them. Stem /nisi-/

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE GLOSSARY

Similarly, some inanimate intransitive verbs, particularly verbal forms of numbers, always occur in a plural form. In the glossary the head entry is the third-person plural form (the form that means 'they (inanimate)...'). As a result the head entry consists of the basic verb stem and the third-person plural suffix, usually **oon**. The stem is identified between diagonal slashes. Here is an example.

nisinoon vii be three of them. *Stem /nisin-/*

Transitive verbs are those that have a subject and an object. There are several different types of transitive verbs. Their word class codes are as follows.

VTA	transitive animate verb
VTI	transitive inanimate verb (- <u>am</u> / <u>-aa</u>)
VTI2	transitive inanimate verb (- <u>oo</u>)
VTI3	transitive inanimate verb (-i)

All transitive verbs have a grammatically animate subject. TRANSITIVE ANIMATE verbs are those that have a grammatically animate object.

For transitive animate verbs, the head word of the glossary entry is always the form of the verb that means you are telling someone to do the action to someone, or to some entity that is grammatically animate (this is called the IMPERATIVE form).

The entries for some transitive animate verbs contain extra information about what the STEM is, as in the following example. You can think of the stem as the most general form of a word once all prefixes and suffixes have been removed. In many cases the stem is the same as the head word of the glossary entry and so does not need to be mentioned. But sometimes the stem is different from the head word, and we list it as part of the glossary entry.

amo VTA eat s.o. *Stem /amw-/*

The head word is still the imperative form, but you will notice there is extra information about the stem of the word. To make other forms of the word, prefixes and suffixes are added to the form between the diagonal slashes, rather than to the head word.

The head word for some transitive animate verbs ends in **zh**. When a transitive animate verb ends in **zh**, the stem is not identical to the head word.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE GLOSSARY

miizh VTA give (s.t.) to s.o. *Stem:* /miiN-/

Notice that the stem of this word is given in the entry as /miiN-/. The capital N means that in certain forms the final consonant of the stem is an **n** sound, as in **nimiinaa** 'I give it to him/her' (with prefix **ni** and suffix **aa**). But in others the final consonant of the stem is **zh**, as in command forms such as the head entry.

If the entry for a transitive animate verb does not contain information about the stem, then other forms of the verb may be made by adding prefixes and suffixes directly to the head word of the entry. Here is a typical example.

waabam VTA see s.o.

Notice also that the entries for transitive animate verbs given above all contain the abbreviation 's.o.' This is short for 'someone.' We know that the grammatical object of a transitive animate verb must be animate, and so it may refer to a human being, an animal, or anything else that is classified as animate in Anishinaabemowin. For convenience, we use the abbreviation 's.o.' to refer to any of these possibilities.

Here is a typical entry for a TRANSITIVE INANIMATE verb which has the word class code VTI.

waabandan VTI see s.t. *Stem* /waabandam-/

Verbs of this class nearly always have a head word that ends in **an**. The entry contains information about the **STEM**, which is a more abstract basic form of the word. To make other forms of verbs of this class it is necessary to change the final **an** to **aan** for many of the forms that will be used in the books of these series. For example, 'I see it' is **niwaabandaan**, with the first person prefix **ni**. In other cases the **an** is changed to **am** when other endings are added: '(that) I see it' would be **waabandamaan**, with the suffix **aan**. These other forms are not discussed in this book, but would be learned in a more advanced course.

Here is a typical entry for a transitive inanimate verb which has the word class code VTI2.

atoon VTI2 put s.t. in a certain place. *Stem* /atoo-/

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE GLOSSARY

Verbs of the **vt12** class contain a long vowel **oo** at the end of the basic stem. The final **n** which follows the long **oo** in the head word is a suffix found in the command forms. You will find that nearly all of the different forms of words of the **vt12** class which you will learn also have a suffix of the form **n**.

There are very few verbs of the **vt13** class. Here is an example.

miijin **vt13** eat s.t. *Stem /miiji-/*

The **n** at the end of the head word is an imperative suffix. As with the **vt12** verbs, most of the forms of **vt13** forms that you will learn also have a suffix of the form **n**.

The entries for transitive inanimate verbs given above all contain the abbreviation 's.t.' This is short for 'something.' We know that the grammatical object of a transitive inanimate verb must be inanimate, and so it may refer to anything that is classified as inanimate in Anishinaabemowin. For convenience, we use the abbreviation 's.t.' in glossary entries.

Particles

There are several other word classes in Anishinaabemowin. There are two different types of **PARTICLES**. This term is used to refer to words that do not take any prefixes or suffixes to indicate information such as person or number. Here are the word class codes for the two types of particles.

PC	uninflected particle
NU	number particle

The term 'uninflected particle' emphasizes that these particles never take suffixes for what are sometimes called 'inflectional' information, such as person and number. Here is a typical entry for an uninflected particle.

aapiji **PC** really, entirely so, completely.

The number particles are forms of numbers which never take any prefixes or suffixes. Here is a typical entry for a number particle.

bezhig **NU** one

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE GLOSSARY

In Anishinaabemowin, numbers may take many different forms. This means that not all of them are number particles. Some may be verbs, prenouns, or preverbs.

Pronouns

The word class code for PRONOUNS is as follows.

PR	pronoun
----	---------

Here is an example of a entry for a pronoun.

niin PR I, me [first person singular personal pronoun].

Prenouns and Preverbs

All of the word classes we have discussed are for items that can be words on their own. However there are certain word classes whose members never occur on their own, but must always be followed by another word.

PREN	prenoun
PREV	preverb
PRE	preverb and prenoun

A PRENOUN must always be directly followed by a noun. The head word of the entry for a prenoun is always followed by a hyphen, to indicate that the prenoun must be followed by a noun. Because prenouns may be followed by many different nouns, the entry for a prenoun does not attempt to list any of the possible combinations (examples will be presented in several different lessons in the books in this series). A typical example of an entry for a prenoun follows. In this book only a small number of prenouns are used.

jiigi- PREN close to

A PREVERB must always be directly followed by a verb. The head word of the entry for a preverb is always followed by a hyphen, to indicate that the preverb must be followed by a verb. Because preverbs may be followed by many different verbs, the entry for a preverb does not attempt to list any of the possible combinations (examples will be presented in several different lessons in the

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE GLOSSARY

books in this series). A typical example of an entry for a preverb follows.

gagwe- PREV try to

Some elements may be used both as a preverb and as a prenoun. The word class code PRE for 'prefix' is assigned to these. This book only contains one or two elements of this type.

gichi- PRE big, great, very

Other Information in Glossary Entries

Some entries also include information about alternative pronunciations of the word, as in the following entry.

i'imaa PR there [animate singular demonstrative]. Also: **imaa**.

Note that this entry also contains further information about the head word in square brackets. A few entries for preverbs contain a notation *Internal Change of* in their translation.

waa- PREV will, want to. *Internal Change of wii-*

This abbreviation refers to INITIAL CHANGE, which is a change in the pronunciation of the vowel in the first syllable of certain forms of verbs and preverbs. The notation '*Internal Change of wii-*' means that **waa-** is the form of the preverb **wii-** which has undergone Initial Change. **Wii-** also has an entry. The differences in the use of **waa-** and **wii-** are explained in the lessons.

Some entries may have an equal sign ('=') at the end of the head word.

ezhinikaade= VII have a certain name, be named. *Internal Change of izhinikaade*.

The equal sign at the end of this word tells us that the word is not complete and would need to have a suffix (ending) added to make a complete word. In the glossary, all words of this type are forms which have Initial Change. The form of the basic word without Initial Change is indicated in the entry.

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE GLOSSARY

You will also find that other entries contain an arrowhead '>' or '<.'

omwaadi PC over here. < **omaa iwid**

The left-pointing arrowhead indicates that the head word is based on a sequence of words which are contracted, much like English 'don't' is a contraction of 'do not.'

Some entries may also contain further information about related words with the same meaning, as in the following.

giishkijiiwayaan NI sweater. *See also nasweta.*

ENGLISH-ANISHINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

In the English-Anishinaabemowin section the head word is an English word or phrase. Each head word may include reference to one or more Anishinaabemowin words. The following entry contains information about one Anishinaabemowin term.

AIRPLANE

ombaasin -an NI airplane, plane. *See also gaa-ombaasing.*

The Anishinaabemowin entry given under this head word is identical to the entry given in the Anishinaabemowin-English section.

Some headwords may include entries for more than one Anishinaabemowin term.

TWO

niizhin NU two

niizhinoon VII be two of them

niizhiwag VAI be two of them

INTRODUCTORY OJIBWE GLOSSARY

Word Class Codes

NA	animate noun
NI	inanimate noun
NAD	dependent animate noun
NID	dependent inanimate noun
NA-PT	animate noun with particle
VAI	animate intransitive verb
VAI2	animate intransitive verb (-am/-aa)
VAI+O	animate intransitive verb + object
VII	inanimate intransitive verb
VTa	transitive animate verb
VTI	transitive inanimate verb (-am/-aa)
VTI2	transitive inanimate verb (-oo)
VTI3	transitive inanimate verb (-i)
PC	uninflected particle
NU	number particle
PREN	prenoun
PREV	preverb
PRE	prenoun and preverb
PR	pronoun

Other Abbreviations

s.o.	someone, something animate
s.t.	something

ANISHINAABEMOWIN - ENGLISH GLOSSARY

abi VAI be there, be in a certain place.

abinoojii *Plural -yag* NA child.

abwewin *Plural -an* NI frying pan.

abwi *Plural -ig* NA paddle.

adik *Plural -oog* NA caribou.

adoopowin *Plural -an* NI table.

agaami-ziibi NI on the other side of the river, across the river.

agaaming PC on the other side of the lake, across the lake.

agaashiinyi VAI be small.

agwajiing PC outside.

ahaaw PC okay.

a'a PR that [animate singular demonstrative]. *See also awe.*

akik *Plural -oog* NA pail.

akikoons *Plural -ag* NA outboard motor. *See also maajiinikaajiganens.*

amanj igo PC I don't know.

amik *Plural -oog* NA beaver.

amo VTA eat s.t. animate, s.o. *Stem /amw-/.*

anang *Plural -oog* NA star.

anaamiya'ii PC under it.

andawaabam VTA look for s.o.

andawaabandan VTI look for s.t. *Stem /andawaabandam-/.*

andawendan VTI need s.t., want s.t. *Stem /andawendam-/.*

andawenim VTA need s.o., want s.o.

andawenjige VAI hunt.

ANISHINAABEMOWIN - ENGLISH GLOSSARY

ando- PV go and do. *Also andawi-*.

ani- PV motion away from, start to.

animikiikaa VII be thundering.

animosh *Plural -ag* NA dog.

anishinaabe *Plural -g* NA native person.

anishinaabekwe *Plural -g* NA native woman.

anokii VAI work.

anwaatin VII be calm (weather).

apabiwin *Plural -an* NI chair.

apane PC always.

apikweshimon *Plural -an* NI pillow.

apii PC when.

ashi PC and (in number combinations).

ashi VTA put s.o., place s.o. *Stem /as-/*.

ate VII be there, be in a certain place. *See also atemagad.*

atemagad VII be there, be in a certain place. *See also ate.*

atoon VT2 put s.t., place s.t. *Stem /atoo-/*.

awan VII fog, be foggy. *See also gashkawan.*

awasaya'ii PC beyond it, on the other side of it.

awasinaago PC day before yesterday.

awasiwaabang PC day after tomorrow.

awe PR that [animate singular demonstrative]. *See also a'a.*

awedi PR that over there [animate singular demonstrative]. *Also wedi.*

awenen PR who.

ANISHINAABEMOWIN - ENGLISH GLOSSARY

awiiya PR someone, a person.

azhigan *Plural -ag* NA sock.

aabaabika'igan *Plural -an* NI key.

aabita PC half.

aabitoo-dibikad VII be midnight.

aadizooke VAI tell a legend, tell a traditional story.

aadizookewin *Plural -an* NI legend, traditional story.

aakozi VAI be sick.

aakoziwimanji'o VAI feel sick.

aamoo *Plural -g* NA bee.

aan PC how, in what manner, why, what. *See also aaniin, aaniish.*

aandi PC where.

aaniin PC how, in what manner, why, what. *See also aan, aaniish.*

aaniinpai PC when? *Also aanapai.*

aaniish PC how, in what manner, why, what. *See also aaniin, aan.*

aapiji PC very, quite.

aazha PC now, then, already.

aazhogan *Plural -an* NI bridge.

babagiwayaan *Plural -an* NI shirt.

babagiwayaanegamig *Plural -oon* NI canvas tent.

babaa- PV here and there, going about.

babiiskwawaagan *Plural -an* NI coat.

badaka'igan *Plural -an* NI fork.

bagwajiya'iing PC in the wilderness.

ANISHINAABEMOWIN - ENGLISH GLOSSARY

bakinaage VAI win, beat in a competition.

bakinaajigaazo VAI be beaten, lose.

bakite'o VTA hit s.o. *Stem /bakite'w-/*.

bakwezhigan *Plural -ag* NA bread. *See also napenh.*

bakwezhiganikaan *Plural -ag* NA bannock.

bangishimon VII be sunset.

bangii PC a little bit.

baabige PC right away.

baabiidaanakwad VII clouds are coming.

baanimaa PC after a while.

baapi VAI laugh.

baashkizigan *Plural -an* NI rifle, gun.

baashkizo VTA shoot s.o. *Stem /baashkizw-/*.

baawitig *Plural -oon* NI rapids, falls.

bekaa PC slowly.

besho PC close to, near to.

beshonjiya'ii PC close to it, near to it.

bezhig NU one.

bezhigo VAI be alone, be one.

bezhigo-dibai'igane VII be one o'clock.

bezhigwan VII be the only one, be one.

bi- PV in this direction, towards, to here.

bijiinaago PC yesterday.

bikwadinaa VII be a hill.

ANISHINAABEMOWIN - ENGLISH GLOSSARY

bikwak *Plural -oon* NI arrow.

bikwan NI blouse.

bimide *Plural -n* NI lard.

bine *Plural -wag* NA partridge.

bineshii *Plural -yag* NA bird.

biidoon VT2 bring s.t. *Stem /biidoo-/*.

biina'an VTA put s.t. inside (a container), pack s.t. *Stem /biina'am-/*.

biina'o VTA put s.o. inside (a container), pack s.o. *Stem /biina'w-/*.

biindig PC indoors, inside.

biindigamig PC inside the house, in a building.

biindige VAI come inside.

biinjayi'ii PC inside it.

biizh VTA bring s.o. *Stem /biiN-/*.

biizhaa VAI come here.

boodawe VAI make a fire.

booni- PV stop, quite.

da- PV future tense.

dagoshin VAI arrive.

dagoshinoomagad VII arrive (s.t. inanimate).

dakaayaa VII be cold outside.

dasinooon VII be a certain number of them. *Stem /dasin-/*.

dasiwag VAI be a certain number of them. *Stem /dasi-/*.

daso- PV a certain amount, so many.

daso-diba'igane VII be a certain time of the day.

ANISHINAABEMOWIN - ENGLISH GLOSSARY

dash PC but, and.

debi- PV enough.

debisinii VAI be full from eating.

debwe PC really, it's true.

dewe'ige VAI be drumming. *See also madwe'ige.*

dibai'igane VII be a time of the day [with combining form of number].

dibai'igaans PC minute.

dibaajimo VAI tell a story.

dibaajimowin Plural -an NI story.

diba'igiiziswaan Plural -ag NA clock.

dibendan VTI own s.t. Stem /dibendam-/.

dibikad VII be night.

dibiki-giizis Plural -oog NA moon.

dikinaagan Plural -an NI cradleboard.

doodam VAI2 do in a certain way.

doodan VTI do s.t. Stem /doodam-/.

doodooshaaboo Plural -n NI milk.

emikwaan Plural -ak NA spoon.

emikwaanens Plural -ag NA teaspoon.

enakamiga= VII be a certain type of activity, be something happening. *Internal Change of inakamigad.*

endaso-diba'igane= VII be a certain time of the day. *Internal Change of daso-diba'igane.*

endood= VTI do s.t. *Internal Change of doodan.*

endooda= VAI2 do in a certain way. *Internal Change of doodam.*

ANISHINABEMOWIN - ENGLISH GLOSSARY

eta PC only.

eya PC yes.

ezhaa= VAI go, go there. *Internal Change of izhaa.*

ezhinikaade= VII have a certain name, be named. *Internal Change of izhinikaade.*

ezhinikaazo= VAI have a certain name, be named. *Internal Change of izhinikaazo.*

ezhiweba= VII be a certain kind of weather, happen. *Internal Change of izhiwebad.*

ga- PV future tense.

gabeshiwi-boodawaan *Plural -an* NI campfire.

gagwe- PV try.

gagwejim VTA ask s.o.

gakina PC all.

gakina gegoon PR everything.

gakiwe VAI portage.

ganawendan VTI take care of s.t. *Stem /ganawendam-/.*

ganawenim VTA take care of s.o.

gashkawan VII fog, be foggy. *See also awan.*

gaye PC and, also.

gaa mashi PC not yet. < **gaawiin mashi.**

gaa-ombaasing *Plural -in* NI-PT airplane. *See also ombaasin.*

gaawiin PC no.

gaawiin wiikaa PC never.

gegiin PR you too [second person singular pronoun].

gegiinawaa PR you too [second person plural pronoun].

gegiinawind PR we too [first person plural inclusive pronoun].

ANISHINAABEMOWIN - ENGLISH GLOSSARY

gegoon PR something, a thing.

geniin PR me too [first person singular pronoun].

geniinawind PR we too [first person plural exclusive pronoun].

gewiin PR him too, her too [third person singular pronoun].

gewiinawaa PR they too, them too [third person plural pronoun].

geyaabi PC still, yet.

giboodyegwaazon *Plural -ag* NA pants.

gichi- PV big, very.

gidaan VTI eat s.t. up. *Stem /gidaa-/*.

gijipizon *Plural -an* NI belt.

gimiwan VII rain, be raining.

gizhaabikizigan *Plural -ag* NA stove.

gizhide VII be hot.

gii- PV past tense.

giigoo *Plural -yag* NA fish.

giimooji- PV secretly.

giin PR you.

giinawaa PR you [second person plural pronoun].

giinawi- PV unable to, fail to.

giinawind PR we [first person plural inclusive pronoun].

giinitam PR you first, you next [second person singular pronoun].

giishkijiiwayaan *Plural -an* NI sweater. *See also nasweta.*

giishpinadoon VTI2 buy s.t. *Stem /giishpinadoo-/*.

giawe VAI go home.

ANISHINAABEMOWIN - ENGLISH GLOSSARY

Giyaashko-Zaagiing PC Gull Bay, Ontario.

giizis *Plural -oog* NA sun, moon, month.

giizisoo-mazina'igan *Plural -an* NI calendar.

giizhigad VII be day.

giizhizan VTI cook s.t. *Stem /giizhizam-/*.

giizhizo VTA cook s.o., cook s.t. animate. *Stem /giizhizw-/*.

giizhoopizon *Plural -ag* NA scarf.

gotaaji VAI be afraid. *See also zegizi.*

gwayak PC correct, properly.

gwiiwizens *Plural -ag* NA boy.

igo PC emphatic particle.

ikido VAI say.

ikwe *Plural -wag* NA woman.

ikwezens *Plural -ag* NA girl.

ina PC question marker [used in yes-no questions]. *Also na.*

inakamigad VII be a certain type of activity, be something happening.

inaabi VAI look in a certain place.

inini *Plural -wag* NA man.

ishkwaa- PY after.

ishkwaandem *Plural -an* NI door.

iwedi PR that (inanimate) over there. *Also i'iwedi, wedi.*

iwidi PC over there.

izhaa VAI go, go there.

izhinikaade VII have a certain name, be named.

ANISHINAABEMOWIN - ENGLISH GLOSSARY

izhinikaazo VAI have a certain name, be named.

izhiwebad VII be a certain kind of weather, happen.

i'ima PC there. *Also imaa.*

jibwaa- PV before.

jiibaakwe VAI cook.

jiigayi'ii PC by it, close to it.

jiigew PC along the shore.

jiigi- PRE close to.

jiimaan *Plural -an* NI canoe.

jiishta'igan *Plural -an* NI broom.

jiiweganaabizhiish *Plural -ag* NA dragonfly.

looloot NI porridge, rolled oats.

made- PV visible (in the distance).

madwe'ige VAI be drumming. *See also dewe'ige.*

makizin *Plural -an* NI shoe.

makwa *Plural -g* NA bear.

mashi PC yet.

mashkiig *Plural -oon* NI swamp.

mawi VAI cry.

mawine'ige VAI sneak up to attack.

mazina'igan *Plural -an* NI book.

ma! PC listen!

maadanokii VAI start to work.

maagizhaa PC maybe, perhaps.

ANISHINABEMOWIN - ENGLISH GLOSSARY

- maajaa** VAI leave, go.
- maajii-** PV start, begin, start off.
- maajiibizo** VAI start off (in a vehicle), leave (in a vehicle).
- maajiinikaajiganens** *Plural -ag* NA outboard motor. *See also akikoons.*
- maaminonendan** VT1 think about s.t. *Stem /maaminonendam-/.*
- maaminonenim** VTA think about s.o.
- maazhi-giizhigad** VII be bad weather, be an unpleasant day.
- ma'iingan** *Plural -ag* NA wolf.
- megwaa** PC while, during.
- memengwe** *Plural -g* NA butterfly.
- midaasinoon** VII be ten of them. *Stem /midaasin-/.*
- midaasiwag** VAI be ten of them. *Stem /midaasi-/.*
- midaaso ashi bezhigo-dibai'igane** VII be eleven o'clock.
- midaaso ashi niizho-dibai'igane** VII be twelve o'clock.
- midaaso-dibai'igane** VII be ten o'clock.
- midaaswi** NU ten.
- migizi** *Plural -ig* NA bald eagle.
- migoshkaadendan** VII be worried about s.t. *Stem /migoshkaadendam-/.*
- minik** PC amount.
- minikwaajigan** *Plural -an* NI cup.
- minikwe** VAI drink.
- minikwe** VAI+O drink s.t.
- minis** *Plural -an* NI island.
- minisaabik** *Plural -oon* NI rocky island.

ANISHINAABEMOWIN - ENGLISH GLOSSARY

minjikaawan *Plural -ag* NA mitten.

minopo VTA like the taste of s.t. animate, s.o. *Stem /minopw-/*.

minopodan VTI like the taste of s.t. *Stem /minopodam-/*.

minwendan VTI like s.t. *Stem /minwendam-/*.

minwenim VTA like s.o.

miskwaadesi *Plural -wag* NA turtle.

mitigwaab *Plural -iig* NA bow.

miigwan *Plural -ag* NA feather.

miigwech PC thank you.

miijin VTI3 eat s.t. *Stem /miiji-/*.

miinawaa PC and, again.

miizh VTA give to s.o. *Stem /miiN-/*.

mooka'am VII sun comes up.

mookomaan *Plural -an* NI knife.

mooz *Plural -oog* NA moose.

moozo-wiiyaas NI moosemeat.

na PC look (here it is).

na PC question marker [used in yes-no questions]. *Also ina.*

nagamo VAI sing.

namadabi VAI sit.

nanaandawaabam VTA look around for s.o.

nanaandawaabandan VTI1 look around for s.t. *Stem /nanaandawaabandam-/*.

napenh *Plural -yag* NA bread. *See also bakwezhigan.*

nasweta *Plural -n* NI sweater. *See also giishkijiiwayaan.*

ANISHINAABEMOWIN - ENGLISH GLOSSARY

nawapowini-makakoons *Plural -an* NI lunchbox. *See also wiisini-makakoons.*

nazhikewizi VAI be alone.

naajikwewe VAI go after women.

naanan NU five.

naananinoon VII be five of them. *Stem /naananin-/.*

naananiwag VAI be five of them. *Stem /naanani-/.*

naanaage PC in a while.

naanimidana PC fifty.

naano-dibai'igane VII be five o'clock.

naawakwe VII be noon.

neyaashiing PC point of land.

neyaashiiwan VII be a point of land, be a peninsula.

nibaa VAI sleep.

nibaagan *Plural -an* NI bed.

nibi NI water.

nika *Plural -g* NA Canada goose.

nimaamaa *Plural -yag* NAD my mother. *Stem /-maamaay-/.*

nimbaabaa *Plural -yag* NAD my father. *Stem /-baabaay-/.*

niminaaweyaandawaagan *Plural -an* NI dock.

nimisenh *Plural -yag* NAD my older sister, my older parallel female cousin. *Stem /-misenh-/.*

nimishoome *Plural -yag* NAD my parallel uncle, my father's brother. *Stem /-mishoomey-/.*

nimishoomis *Plural -ag* NAD my grandfather. *Stem /-mishoomis-/.*

nina'aanganikwe *Plural -g* NAD my daughter-in-law, my cross niece. *Stem /-na'aanganikwe-/.*

nindawemaa *Plural -g* NAD sibling of opposite sex, brother or sister of opposite sex. *Stem /-*

ANISHINAABEMOWIN - ENGLISH GLOSSARY

dawemaa-/-.

ninday *Plural -ag* NAD my dog. *Stem /-day/*.

nindaangoshenh *Plural -yag* NAD my female cross cousin (woman speaking) [mother's brother's daughter, father's sister's daughter]. *Stem /-daangoshenh-/*.

nindaangwe *Plural -yag* NAD my sister-in-law (woman speaking). *Stem /-daangwey-/*.

nindaanis *Plural -ag* NAD my daughter. *Stem /-daanis-/*.

nindoozhim *Plural -ag* NAD my parallel nephew or niece. *Stem /-doozhim-/*.

ningodwaasimidana PC sixty.

ningodwaasinoon VII be six of them. *Stem /ningodwaasin-/*.

ningodwaasiwag VAI be six of them. *Stem /ningodwaasi-/*.

ningodwaaso-dibai'igane VII be six o'clock.

ningodwaaswi NU six.

ningozis *Plural -ag* NAD my son. *Stem /-gozis-/*.

ningwakwad VII be cloudy. *See also ningwaanakwad.*

ningwaanakwad VII be cloudy. *See also ningwakwad.*

ninoshenh *Plural -yag* NAD my parallel aunt, my mother's sister. *Stem /-noshenh-/*.

ninzigos *Plural -ag* NAD my cross aunt, my father's sister, my mother-in-law. *Stem /-zigos-/*.

nisayenh *Plural -yag* NAD my older brother. *Stem /-sayenh-/*.

nisidotan VTI understand s.t. *Stem /nisidotam-/*.

nisimidana PC thirty.

nisinoon VII be three of them. *Stem /nisin-/*.

nisiwag VAI be three of them. *Stem /nisi-/*.

niso-dibai'igane VII be three o'clock.

niswi NU three.

ANISHINAABEMOWIN - ENGLISH GLOSSARY

nishi VTA kill s.o. *Stem /nis-/*.

nishiime *Plural -yag* NAD my younger sibling, my younger brother or sister. *Stem /-shiimey-/*.

nishkaadizi VAI be angry.

nishoonaadakamigizi VAI be busy destroying things.

nishwaasinoon VII be eight of them. *Stem /nishwaasin-/*.

nishwaasiwag VAI be eight of them. *Stem /nishwaasi-/*.

nishwaaswi PC eight.

nishwaaswi-dibai'igane VII be eight o'clock.

nitam PC first, next.

nitaa- PV be skilled at, be good at, do habitually, know how.

nitii NI tea.

nitiiwakik *Plural -oog* NA teakettle.

nitooon VT12 kill s.t. *Stem /nitoo-/*.

niwiidigemaagan *Plural -ag* NAD my spouse, my partner. *Stem /-wiidigemaagan-/*.

niibawi VAI stand.

niimi VAI dance.

niimidana PC forty.

niin PR I, me [first person singular pronoun].

niinawind PR we [first person plural exclusive pronoun].

niinim *Plural -oog* NAD my sister-in-law (man speaking). *Stem /-iinimw-/*.

niinimoshenh *Plural -yag* NAD my sweetheart, my cross-cousin of opposite sex.
Stem /-iinimoshenh-/.

niinitam PR me first, me next [first person singular pronoun].

niishtana NU twenty.

ANISHINAABEMOWIN - ENGLISH GLOSSARY

niitaa *Plural -g* NAD my brother-in-law (man speaking). *Stem /-iitaa-/*.

niitaawis *Plural -ag* NAD my male cross cousin (man speaking) [father's sister's son or mother's brother's son]. *Stem /-iitaawis-/*.

niiwin NU four.

niiwinoon VII be four of them. *Stem /niiwin-/*.

niiwiwag VAI be four of them. *Stem /niiwi-/*.

niiyo-dibai'igane VII be four o'clock.

niizhin NU two.

niizhinoon VII be two of them. *Stem /niizhin-/*.

niizhiwag VAI be two of them. *Stem /niizhi-/*.

niizho-dibai'igane VII be two o'clock.

niizhwaasinoon VII be seven of them. *Stem /niizhwaasin-/*.

niizhwaasiwag VAI be seven of them. *Stem /niizhwaaswi-/*.

niizhwaaso-dibai'igane VII be seven o'clock.

niizhwaaswi NU seven.

noodin VII be windy.

nookomis *Plural -ag* NAD my grandmother. *Stem /-ookomis-/*.

noonde- PV need to, before the usual time.

noongom PC now.

noongom gaa-giizhigak VII today.

noopiming PC in the forest, in the bush, inland.

noozhis *Plural -ag* NAD my grandchild. *Stem /-oozhis-/*.

odamino VAI play.

odaabaanens *Plural -ag* NA car, automobile.

ANISHINAABEMOWIN - ENGLISH GLOSSARY

ogimaa *Plural -g* NA boss, chief.

okaadaak *Plural -oog* NA carrot.

ombaasin *Plural -an* NI airplane. *See also* gaa-ombaasing.

omwaadi PC over here. < omaa widi.

onaagan *Plural -an* NI dish, plate.

onigam *Plural -iin* NI portage.

onjii VAI come from a certain place.

onzaam PC too much, excessive.

opimeya'ii PC alongside it.

opin *Plural -iin* NI potato.

opwaagan *Plural -ag* NA pipe.

osha PC indeed [emphatic particle]. *Also* sha.

oshta PC oh my.

owedi PR this over here [inanimate singular demonstrative]. *Also* wedi.

owidi PC over here.

ozhibii'iganaak *Plural -oog* NA pencil, pen.

ozhibii'ige VAI write.

oonh PC oh.

o'omaa PC here. *Also* omaa.

wagijiya'ii PC on top of it.

wajiw *Plural -an* NI mountain.

wani- PV by mistake, in error.

wanishkaa VAI get up.

waniikaadan VTI forget s.t. *Stem* /waniikaadam-/.

ANISHINAABEMOWIN - ENGLISH GLOSSARY

waniikaazh VTA forget s.o. *Stem /waniikaaN-/*.

wanii'igan *Plural -an* NI trap.

waa- PV want [voluntative prefix]. *Internal Change of wii*.

waabam VTA see s.o.

waabandan VTI see s.t. *Stem /waabandam-/*.

waabang PC tomorrow.

waabishkiiwe *Plural -g* NA white person. *See also zhaaganaash.*

waabishkiiwekwe *Plural -g* NA white woman. *See also zhaaganaashiikwe.*

waabishkiiwemo VAI speak English. *See also zhaaganaashiimo.*

waabowayaan *Plural -an* NI blanket.

waabooz *Plural -oog* NA rabbit.

waagaakwad *Plural -oon* NI axe.

waagosh *Plural -ag* NA fox.

waakaa'igan *Plural -an* NI house.

waanzhibiiyaa VII be a pond.

waasa PC far.

waasechigan *Plural -an* NI window.

waaseyaa VII be bright out, be sunny.

waawan *Plural -oon* NI egg.

waawaate VII be the Northern Lights.

waazakonenjigan *Plural -an* NI lamp.

wedi PC there.

wegonen PR what.

weshkad PC a long time ago.

ANISHINAABEMOWIN - ENGLISH GLOSSARY

wewiib PC hurry, in a hurry, quickly.

wii- PV want [voluntative prefix].

wiiba PC hurry, soon, early.

wiidge VAI get married.

wiigiwaam *Plural -an* NI tent.

wiiji' VTA help s.o.

wiijitoon VT12 help s.t. *Stem /wiijitoo-/*.

wiijiw VTA go with s.o., accompany s.o.

wiikaa PC ever.

wiikwedong PC at a bay.

wiin PR he, she, him, her [third person singular pronoun].

wiinawaa PR they, them [third person plural pronoun].

wiindamaw VTA tell s.o.

wiinitam PR him first, him next, her first, her next [second person singular pronoun].

wiisagad NI pepper.

wiisini VAI eat.

wiisini-makakoons *Plural -an* NI lunchbox. *See also nawapowini-makakoons.*

wiiwakwaan *Plural -an* NI hat.

wiiaas *Plural -an* NI meat.

zaagaate VII be a sunny day, be shiny out.

zaaga'igan *Plural -iing* NI lake.

zaagitoon VT12 love s.t., treasure s.t. *Stem /zaagitoo-/*.

zaagi' VTA love s.o.

zegizi VAI be afraid. *See also gotaaji.*

ANISHINAABEMOWIN - ENGLISH GLOSSARY

ziibi *Plural -in* NI river.

ziinzibaakwad NI sugar.

zoogipon VII be snowing.

zhaaganaash *Plural -ag* NA white person. *See also waabishkiiwe.*

zhaaganaashiikwe *Plural -ag* NA white woman. *See also waabishkiiwekwe.*

zhaaganaashiimo VAI speak English. *See also waabishkiiwemo.*

zhaangasinoon VII be nine of them. *Stem /zhaangasin-/.*

zhaangasiwag VAI be nine of them. *Stem /zhaangasi-/.*

zhaangaswi NU nine.

zhaangaswi-dibai'igane VII be nine o'clock.

zhigaag *Plural -oog* NA skunk.

zhiibaaya'ii PC under it.

zhiishiib *Plural -ag* NA duck.

zhiiwitaagan *Plural -an* NI salt.

English- Anishinaabemowin Glossary

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ENGLISH - ANINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

ABOUT

babaa- PV here and there, going about.

ACCOMPANY

wijjiw VTA go with s.o., accompany s.o.

ACROSS

agaami-ziibi NI on the other side of the river, across the river.

agaaming PC on the other side of the lake, across the lake.

ACTIVITY

enakamiga= VII be a certain type of activity, be something happening. *Initial Change of inakamigad.*

inakamigad VII be a certain type of activity, be something happening.

AFRAID

gotaaji VAI be afraid. *See also zegizi.*

zegizi VAI be afraid. *See also gotaaji.*

AFTER

awasiwaabang PC day after tomorrow.

baanimaa PC after a while.

ishkwaa- PV after.

AGAIN

miinawaa PC and, again.

AGO

weshkad PC a long time ago.

AIRPLANE

gaa-ombaasing NI-PT airplane. *See also ombaasin.*

ombaasin NI airplane. *See also gaa-ombaasing.*

ALL

gakina PC all.

ALONE

bezhigo VAI be alone, be one.

nazhikewizi VAI be alone.

ALONG

jiigew PC along the shore.

ALONGSIDE

opimeya'ii PC alongside it.

ENGLISH - ANISHINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

ALREADY

aazha PC now, then, already.

ALSO

gaye PC and, also.

ALWAYS

apane PC always.

AMOUNT

daso- PV a certain amount, so many.

minik PC amount.

AND

ashi PC and (in number combinations).

dash PC but, and.

gaye PC and, also.

miinawaa PC and, again.

ANGRY

nishkaadizi VAI be angry.

ARRIVE

dagoshin VAI arrive.

dagoshinoomagad VII arrive (s.t. inanimate).

ARROW

bikwak NI arrow.

ASK

gagwejim VTA ask s.o.

ATTACK

mawine'ige VAI sneak up to attack.

AUNT

ninoshenh NAD my parallel aunt, my mother's sister. *Stem /-noshenh-/*.

ninzigos NAD my cross aunt, my father's sister, my mother-in-law. *Stem /-zigos-/*.

AWAY

ani- PV motion away from, start to.

AXE

waagaakwad NI axe.

BAD

maazhi-giizhigad VII be bad weather, be an unpleasant day.

ENGLISH - ANINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

BANNOCK

bakwezhiganikaan NA bannock.

BAY

wiikwedong PC at a bay.

BE

abi VAI be there, be in a certain place.

ate VII be there, be in a certain place. *See also atemagad.*

atemagad VII be there, be in a certain place. *See also ate.*

BEAR

makwa NA bear.

BEAT

bakinaage VAI win, beat in a competition.

bakinaajigaazo VAI be beaten, lose.

BEAVER

amik NA beaver.

BED

nibaagan NI bed.

BEE

aamoo NA bee.

BEFORE

awasinaago PC day before yesterday.

jibwaa- PV before.

noonde- PV need to, before the usual time.

BEGIN

maajii- PV start, begin, start off.

BELT

gijipizon NI belt.

BEYOND

awasaya'ii PC beyond it, on the other side of it.

BIG

gichi- PV big, very.

BIRD

bineshii NA bird.

ENGLISH - ANISHINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

BIT

bangii PC a little bit.

BLANKET

waabowayaan NI blanket.

BLOUSE

bikwan NI blouse.

BOOK

mazina'igan NI book.

BOSS

ogimaa NA boss, chief.

BOW

mitigwaab NA bow.

BOY

gwiiwizens NA boy.

BREAD

bakwezhigan NA bread. *See also napenh.*

napenh NA bread. *See also bakwezhigan.*

BRIDGE

aazhogan NI bridge.

BRIGHT

waaseyaa VII be bright out, be sunny.

BRING

biidoon VT2 bring s.t. *Stem /biidoo-/.*

biizh VTA bring s.o. *Stem /biin-/.*

BROOM

jiishta'igan NI broom.

BROTHER

nindawemaa NAD sibling of opposite sex, brother or sister of opposite sex. *Stem /-dawemaa-/.*

nisayenh NAD my older brother. *Stem /-sayenh-/.*

nishiime NAD my younger sibling, my younger brother or sister. *Stem /-shiimey-/.*

BROTHER-IN-LAW

niitaa NAD my brother-in-law (man speaking). *Stem /-iitaa-/.*

ENGLISH - ANINAAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

BUILDING

biindigamig PC inside the house, in a building.

BUSH

noopiming PC in the forest, in the bush, inland.

BUT

dash PC but, and.

BUTTERFLY

memengwe NA butterfly.

BUY

giishpinadoon VT12 buy s.t. Stem /giishpinadoo-/.
Lakehead University Faculty of Education

BY

jiigayi'ii PC by it, close to it.

CALENDAR

giizisoo-mazina'igan NI calendar.

CALM

anwaatin VII be calm (weather).

CAMPFIRE

gabeshiwi-boodawaan NI campfire.

CANADA GOOSE

nika NA Canada goose.

CANOE

jiimaan NI canoe.

CANVAS

babagiwayaanegamig NI canvas tent.

CAR, AUTOMOBILE

odaabaanens NA car, automobile.

CARIBOU

adik NA caribou.

CARROT

okaadaak NA carrot.

CHAIR

apabiwin NI chair.

ENGLISH - ANISHINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

CHIEF

ogimaa NA boss, chief.

CHILD

abinoojii NA child.

CLOCK

diba'igiiziswaan NA clock.

CLOSE

besho PC close to, near to.

beshonjiya'ii PC close to it, near to it.

jiigayi'ii PC by it, close to it.

jiigi- PRE close to.

CLOUD

baabiidaanakwad VII clouds are coming.

CLOUDY

ningwaanakwad VII be cloudy. *See also ningwakwad.*

ningwakwad VII be cloudy. *See also ningwaanakwad.*

COAT

babiiskwawaagan NI coat.

COLD

dakaayaa VII be cold outside.

COME

baabiidaanakwad VII clouds are coming.

biindige VAI come inside.

biizhaa VAI come here.

COME UP

mooka'am VII sun comes up.

COOK

giizhizan VTI cook s.t. *Stem /giizhizam-/.*

giizhizo VTA cook s.o., cook s.t. animate. *Stem /giizhizw-/.*

jiibaakwe VAI cook.

CORRECT

gwayak PC correct, properly.

COUSIN

niinimoshenh NAD my sweetheart, my cross-cousin of opposite sex. *Stem /-iinimoshenh-/.*

niitaawis NAD my male cross cousin (man speaking) [father's sister's son or mother's brother's son].

ENGLISH - ANINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

Stem /-iitaawis-/.

nimisenh NAD my older sister, my older parallel female cousin. *Stem /-misenh-/.*

nindaangoshenh NAD my female cross cousin (woman speaking) [mother's brother's daughter, father's sister's daughter]. *Stem /-daangoshenh-/.*

CRADLEBOARD

dikinaagan NI cradleboard.

CRY

mawi VAI cry.

CUP

minikwaajigan NI cup.

DANCE

niimi VAI dance.

DAUGHTER

nindaanis NAD my daughter. *Stem /-daanis-/.*

DAUGHTER-IN-LAW

nina'aanganikwe NAD my daughter-in-law, my cross-niece. *Stem /-na'aanganikwe-/.*

DAY

awasinaago PC day before yesterday.

awasiwaabang PC day after tomorrow.

daso-diba'igane VII be a certain time of the day.

dibai'igane VII be a time of the day [with combining form of number].

endaso-diba'igane= VII be a certain time of the day. *Initial Change of daso-diba'igane.*

giizhigad VII be day.

maazhi-giizhigad VII be bad weather, be an unpleasant day.

DESTROY

nishoonadakamigizi VAI be busy destroying things.

DISH

onaagan NI dish, plate.

DO

ando- PV go and do. Also **andawi-**.

doodam VAI2 do in a certain way.

doodan VTI do s.t. *Stem /doodam-/.*

endood= VTI do s.t. *Initial Change of doodan.*

endooda= VAI2 do in a certain way. *Initial Change of doodam.*

DOCK

niminaaweyaandawaagan NI dock.

ENGLISH - ANISHINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

DOG

animosh NA dog.

ninday NAD my dog. *Stem /-day/.*

DON'T

amanj igo PC I don't know.

DOOR

ishkwaandem NI door.

DRAGONFLY

jiiweganaabizhiish NA dragonfly.

DRINK

minikwe VAI drink.

minikwe VAI+O drink s.t.

DRIVE

maajiibizo VAI start off (in a vehicle), leave (in a vehicle).

DRUM

dewe'ige VAI be drumming. *See also madwe'ige.*

madwe'ige VAI be drumming. *See also dewe'ige.*

DUCK

zhiishiib NA duck.

DURING

megwaa PC while, during.

EAGLE

migizi NA bald eagle.

EARLY

wiiba PC hurry, soon, early.

EAT

amo VTA eat s.t. animate, s.o. *Stem /amw-/.*

debisinii VAI be full from eating.

gidaan VTI eat s.t. up. *Stem /gidaa-/.*

miijin VT13 eat s.t. *Stem /miiji-/.*

wiisini VAI eat.

EGG

waawan NI egg.

ENGLISH - ANINAAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

EIGHT

nishwaasinoon VII be eight of them. *Stem /nishwaasin-/.*

nishwaasiwag VAI be eight of them. *Stem /nishwaasi-/.*

nishwaaswi PC eight.

nishwaaswi-dibai'igane VII be eight o'clock.

ELEVEN

midaaso ashi bezhigo-dibai'igane VII be eleven o'clock.

EMPHATIC

igo PC emphatic particle.

osha PC indeed [emphatic particle]. *Also sha.*

ENGLISH

waabishkiiwemo VAI speak English. *See also zhaaganaashiimo.*

zhaaganaashiimo VAI speak English. *See also waabishkiiwemo.*

ENOUGH

debi- PV enough.

ERROR

wani- PV by mistake, in error.

EVER

wiikaa PC ever.

EVERYTHING

gakina gegoon PR everything.

EXCESSIVE

onzaam PC too much, excessive.

EXCLUSIVE

niinawind PR we [first person plural exclusive pronoun].

FAIL

giinawi- PV unable to, fail to.

FALLS

baawitig NI rapids, falls.

FAR

waasa PC far.

FATHER

nimbaabaa NAD my father. *Stem /-baabaay-/.*

ENGLISH - ANISHINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

FEATHER

miigwan NA feather.

FEEL

aakoziiwimanji'o VAI feel sick.

FIFTY

naanimidana PC fifty.

FIRE

boodawe VAI make a fire.

FIRST

giinitam PR you first, you next [second person singular pronoun].

niinitam PR me first, me next [first person singular pronoun].

nitam PC first, next.

wiinitam PR him first, him next, her first, her next [second person singular pronoun].

FISH

giigoo NA fish.

FIVE

naanan NU five.

naananinoon VII be five of them. Stem /naananin-/.

naananiwag VAI be five of them. Stem /naanani-/.

naano-dibai'igane VII be five o'clock.

FOG

awan VII fog, be foggy. *See also gashkawan.*

gashkawan VII fog, be foggy. *See also awan.*

FOREST

noopiming PC in the forest, in the bush, inland.

FORGET

waniikaadan VII forget s.t. Stem /waniikaadam-/.

waniikaazh VTA forget s.o. Stem /waniikaaN-/.

FORK

badaka'igan NI fork.

FORTY

niimidana PC forty.

FOUR

niiwin NU four.

niiwinoon VII be four of them. Stem /niiwin-/.

ENGLISH - ANINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

niiwiwag VAI be four of them. *Stem /niiwi-/*.
niiyo-dibai'igane VII be four o'clock.

FOX

waagosh NA fox.

FRYING PAN

abwewin NI frying pan.

FULL

debisinii VAI be full from eating.

FUTURE

da- PV future tense.

ga- PV future tense.

GET UP

wanishkaa VAI get up.

GIRL

ikwezens NA girl.

GIVE

miizh VTA give to s.o. *Stem /miin-/*.

GO

ando- PV go and do. *Also andawi-*.

babaa- PV here and there, going about.

ezhaa= VAI go, go there. *Initial Change of izhaa.*

giwe VAI go home.

izhaa VAI go, go there.

maajaa VAI leave, go.

GO AFTER

naajikwewe VAI go after women.

GO WITH

wijjiw VTA go with s.o., accompany s.o.

GOOD

nitaa- PV be skilled at, be good at, do habitually, know how.

GOOSE

nika NA Canada goose.

GRANDCHILD

noozhis NAD my grandchild. *Stem /-oozhis-/*.

ENGLISH - ANISHINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

GRANDFATHER

nimishoomis NAD my grandfather. *Stem /-mishoomis-/*.

GRANDMOTHER

nookomis NAD my grandmother. *Stem /-ookomis-/*.

GULL BAY, ONTARIO

Giiyaashko-Zaagiing PC Gull Bay, Ontario.

GUN

baashkizigan NI rifle, gun.

HABITUALLY

nitaa- PV be skilled at, be good at, do habitually, know how.

HALF

aabita PC half.

HAPPEN

enakamiga= VII be a certain type of activity, be something happening. *Initial Change of inakamigad.*

ezhiweba= VII be a certain kind of weather, happen. *Initial Change of izhiwebad.*

inakamigad VII be a certain type of activity, be something happening.

izhiwebad VII be a certain kind of weather, happen.

HAT

wiiwakwaan NI hat.

HE

wiin PR he, she, him, her [third person singular pronoun].

HELP

wiiji' VTA help s.o.

wiijitoon VT2 help s.t. *Stem /wiijitoo-/*.

HER

gewiin PR him too, her too [third person singular pronoun].

wiinitam PR him first, him next, her first, her next [second person singular pronoun].

HERE

bi- PV in this direction, towards, to here.

biizhaa VAI come here.

o'omaa PC here. *Also omaa.*

omwaadi PC over here.

owedi PR this over here [inanimate singular demonstrative]. *Also wedi.*

owidi PC over here.

ENGLISH - ANINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

HERE AND THERE

babaa- PV here and there, going about.

HILL

bikwadinaa VII be a hill.

HIM

gewiin PR him too, her too [third person singular pronoun].

wiin PR he, she, him, her [third person singular pronoun].

wiinitam PR him first, him next, her first, her next [second person singular pronoun].

HIT

bakite'o VTA hit s.o. *Stem /bakite'w-/-*.

HOME

giiwe VAI go home.

HOT

gizhide VII be hot.

HOUSE

biindigamig PC inside the house, in a building.

waakaa'igan NI house.

HOW

aan PC how, in what manner, why, what. *See also aaniin, aaniish.*

aaniin PC how, in what manner, why, what. *See also aan, aaniish.*

aaniish PC how, in what manner, why, what. *See also aaniin, aan.*

HUNT

andawenjige VAI hunt.

HURRY

wewiib PC hurry, in a hurry, quickly.

wiiba PC hurry, soon, early.

I

geniin PR me too [first person singular pronoun].

niin PR I, me [first person singular pronoun].

INCLUSIVE

gegiinawind PR we too [first person plural inclusive pronoun].

giinawind PR we [first person plural inclusive pronoun].

INDEED

osha PC indeed [emphatic particle]. *Also sha.*

ENGLISH - ANISHINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

INDOORS

biindig PC indoors, inside.

INLAND

noopiming PC in the forest, in the bush, inland.

INSIDE

biindig PC indoors, inside.

biindigamig PC inside the house, in a building.

biindige VAI come inside.

biinjayi'ii PC inside it.

ISLAND

minis NI island.

minisaabik NI rocky island.

KETTLE

nitiwakik NA teakettle.

KEY

aabaabika'igan NI key.

KILL

nishi VTA kill s.o. Stem /nis-/.

nitoo VTI2 kill s.t. Stem /nitoo-/.

KNIFE

mookomaan NI knife.

KNOW

amanj igo PC I don't know.

nitaa- PV be skilled at, be good at, do habitually, know how.

LAKE

agaaming PC on the other side of the lake, across the lake.

zaaga'igan NI lake.

LAMP

waazakonenjigan NI lamp.

LAND

neyaashiing PC point of land.

neyaashiiwan VII be a point of land, be a peninsula.

LARD

bimide NI lard.

ENGLISH - ANINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

LAUGH

baapi VAI laugh.

LEAVE

maajaa VAI leave, go.

maajiibizo VAI start off (in a vehicle), leave (in a vehicle).

LEGEND

aadizooke VAI tell a legend, tell a traditional story.

aadizookewin NI legend, traditional story.

LIKE

minopo VTA like the taste of s.t. animate, s.o. Stem /minopw-/.

minopodan VTI like the taste of s.t. Stem /minopodam-/.

minwendan VTI like s.t. Stem /minwendam-/.

minwenim VTA like s.o.

LISTEN

ma! PC listen!

LITTLE

bangii PC a little bit.

LONG

weshkad PC a long time ago.

LOOK

inaabi VAI look in a certain place.

na PC look (here it is).

nanaandawaabam VTA look around for s.o.

nanaandawaabandan VTI1 look around for s.t. Stem /nanaandawaabandam-/.

LOOK FOR

andawaabam VTA look for s.o.

andawaabandan VTI look for s.t. Stem /andawaabandam-/.

LOSE

bakinaajigaazo VAI be beaten, lose.

LOVE

zaagi' VTA love s.o.

zaagitoon VTI2 love s.t., treasure s.t. Stem /zaagitoo-/.

LUNCHBOX

nawapowini-makakoons NI lunchbox. See also wiisini-makakoons.

wiisini-makakoons NI lunchbox. See also nawapowini-makakoons.

ENGLISH - ANISHINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

MAKE

boodawe VAI make a fire.

MAN

inini NA man.

MANY

daso- PV a certain amount, so many.

MARRY

wiidige VAI get married.

MAYBE

maagizhaa PC maybe, perhaps.

ME

geniin PR me too [first person singular pronoun].

niin PR I, me [first person singular pronoun].

niinitam PR me first, me next [first person singular pronoun].

MEAT

moozo-wiiaas NI moosemeat.

wiiaas NI meat.

MIDNIGHT

aabitoo-dibikad VII be midnight.

MILK

doodooshaaboo NI milk.

MINUTE

dibai'igaans PC minute.

MISTAKE

wani- PV by mistake, in error.

MITTEN

minjikaawan NA mitten.

MONTH

giizis NA sun, moon, month.

MOON

dibiki-giizis NA moon.

giizis NA sun, moon, month.

ENGLISH - ANINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

MOOSE

mooz NA moose.

moozo-wiyyaas NI moosemeat.

MOTHER

nimaamaa NAD my mother. *Stem /-maamaay-/.*

MOTHER-IN-LAW

ninzigos NAD my cross aunt, my father's sister, my mother-in-law. *Stem /-zigos-/.*

MOTOR

akikoons NA outboard motor. *See also maajiinikaajiganens.*

maajiinikaajiganens NA outboard motor. *See also akikoons.*

MOUNTAIN

wajiw NI mountain.

NAME

ezhinikaade= VII have a certain name, be named. *Initial Change of izhinikaade.*

ezhinikaazo= VAI have a certain name, be named. *Initial Change of izhinikaazo.*

izhinikaade VII have a certain name, be named.

izhinikaazo VAI have a certain name, be named.

NATIVE

anishinaabe NA native person.

anishinaabekwe NA native woman.

NEAR

besho PC close to, near to.

beshonjiya'ii PC close to it, near to it.

NEED

andawendan VTI need s.t., want s.t. *Stem /andawendam-/.*

andawenim VTA need s.o., want s.o.

noonde- PV need to, before the usual time.

NEPHEW

nindoozhim NAD my parallel nephew or niece. *Stem /-doozhim-/.*

NEVER

gaawiin wiikaa PC never.

NEXT

giinitam PR you first, you next [second person singular pronoun].

niinitam PR me first, me next [first person singular pronoun].

nitam PC first, next.

wiinitam PR him first, him next, her first, her next [second person singular pronoun].

ENGLISH - ANISHINABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

NIECE

nina'aanganikwe NAD my daughter-in-law, my cross niece. *Stem /-na'aanganikwe-/*.
nindoozhim NAD my parallel nephew or niece. *Stem /-doozhim-/*.

NIGHT

dibikad VII be night.

NINE

zhaangasinoon VII be nine of them. *Stem /zhaangasin-/*.
zhaangasiwag VAI be nine of them. *Stem /zhaangasi-/*.
zhaangaswi NU nine.
zhaangaswi-dibai'igane VII be nine o'clock.

NO

gaawiin PC no.

NOON

naawakwe VII be noon.

NORTHERN LIGHTS

waawaate VII be the Northern Lights.

NOT

gaa mashi PC not yet.

NOW

aazha PC now, then, already.
noongom PC now.

NUMBER

dasinoon VII be a certain number of them. *Stem /dasin-/*.
dasiwag VAI be a certain number of them. *Stem /dasi-/*.

OH

oonh PC oh.
oshta PC oh my.

OKAY

ahaaw PC okay.

ONE

bezhig NU one.
bezhigo VAI be alone, be one.
bezhigo-dibai'igane VII be one o'clock.
bezhigwan VII be the only one, be one.

ENGLISH - ANINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

ONLY

eta PC only.

OTHER

agaami-ziibi NI on the other side of the river, across the river.
awasaya'ii PC beyond it, on the other side of it.

OTHER SIDE

agaaming PC on the other side of the lake, across the lake.

OUTSIDE

agwajiing PC outside.

OWN

dibendan VT own s.t. *Stem /dibendam-/*.

PACK

biina'an VTA put s.t. inside (a container), pack s.t. *Stem /biina'am-/*.
biina'o VTA put s.o. inside (a container), pack s.o. *Stem /biina'w-/*.

PADDLE

abwi NA paddle.

PAIL

akik NA pail.

PAN

abwewin NI frying pan.

PANTS

giboodiyegwaazon NA pants.

PARTNER

niwiidigemaagan NAD my spouse, my partner. *Stem /-wiidigemaagan-/*.

PARTRIDGE

bine NA partridge.

PAST

gii- PV past tense.

PEN

ozhibii'iganaak NA pencil, pen.

PENCIL

ozhibii'iganaak NA pencil, pen.

ENGLISH - ANISHINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

PENINSULA

neyaashiiwan VII be a point of land, be a peninsula.

PEPPER

wiisagad NI pepper.

PERHAPS

maagizhaa PC maybe, perhaps.

PERSON

awiiya PR someone, a person.

PILLOW

apikweshimon NI pillow.

PIPE

opwaagan NA pipe.

PLACE

ashi VTA put s.o., place s.o. *Stem /as-/*.

atoon VT12 put s.t., place s.t. *Stem /atoo-/*.

onjii VAI come from a certain place.

PLATE

onaagan NI dish, plate.

PLAY

odamino VAI play.

POINT

neyaashiing PC point of land.

neyaashiiwan VII be a point of land, be a peninsula.

POND

waanzhibiiyaa VII be a pond.

PORRIDGE

looloot NI porridge, rolled oats.

PORTAGE

gakiwe VAI portage.

onigam NI portage.

POTATO

opin NI potato.

ENGLISH - ANINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

PROPERLY

gwayak PC correct, properly.

PUT

ashi VTA put s.o., place s.o. *Stem /as-/*.

atoon VT2 put s.t., place s.t. *Stem /atoo-/*.

biina'an VTA put s.t. inside (a container), pack s.t. *Stem /biina'am-/*.

biina'o VTA put s.o. inside (a container), pack s.o. *Stem /biina'w-/*.

QUESTION

ina PC question marker [used in yes-no questions]. *Also na.*

na PC question marker [used in yes-no questions]. *Also ina.*

QUICKLY

wewiib PC hurry, in a hurry, quickly.

QUIT

booni- PV stop, quite.

QUITE

aapiji PC very, quite.

RABBIT

waabooz NA rabbit.

RAIN

gimiwan VII rain, be raining.

RAPIDS

baawitig NI rapids, falls.

REALLY

debwe PC really, it's true.

RIFLE

baashkizigan NI rifle, gun.

RIGHT AWAY

baabige PC right away.

RIVER

agaami-ziibi NI on the other side of the river, across the river.

ziibi NI river.

ROCK

minisaabik NI rocky island.

ENGLISH - ANISHINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

SALT

zhiiwitaagan NI salt.

SAY

ikido VAI say.

SCARF

giizhoopizon NA scarf.

SECRETLY

giimooji- PV secretly.

SEE

waabam VTA see s.o.

waabandan VTI see s.t. Stem /waabandam-/.

SEVEN

niizhwaasinoon VII be seven of them. Stem /niizhwaasin-/.

niizhwaasiwag VAI be seven of them. Stem /niizhwaaswi-/.

niizhwaaso-dibai'igane VII be seven o'clock.

niizhwaaswi NU seven.

SHE

wiin PR he, she, him, her [third person singular pronoun].

SHIRT

babagiwayaan NI shirt.

SHOE

makizin NI shoe.

SHOOT

baashkizo VTA shoot s.o. Stem /baashkizw-/.

SHORE

jiigew PC along the shore.

SIBLING

nindawemaa NAD sibling of opposite sex, brother or sister of opposite sex. Stem /-dawemaa-/.

nishiime NAD my younger sibling, my younger brother or sister. Stem /-shiimey-/.

SICK

aakozi VAI be sick.

aakoziiwimanji'o VAI feel sick.

SIDE

awasaya'ii PC beyond it, on the other side of it.

ENGLISH - ANINAAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

SING

nagamo VAI sing.

SISTER

nimisenh NAD my older sister, my older parallel female cousin. *Stem /-misenh-/*.

nindawemaa NAD sibling of opposite sex, brother or sister of opposite sex. *Stem /-dawemaa-/*.

nishiime NAD my younger sibling, my younger brother or sister. *Stem /-shiimey-/*.

SISTER-IN-LAW

niinim NAD my sister-in-law (man speaking). *Stem /-iinimw-/*.

nindaangwe NAD my sister-in-law (woman speaking). *Stem /-daangwey-/*.

SIT

namadabi VAI sit.

SIX

ningodwaasinoon VII be six of them. *Stem /ningodwaasin-/*.

ningodwaasiwag VAI be six of them. *Stem /ningodwaasi-/*.

ningodwaaso-dibai'igane VII be six o'clock.

ningodwaaswi NU six.

SIXTY

ningodwaasimidana PC sixty.

SKILLED

nitaa- PV be skilled at, be good at, do habitually, know how.

SKUNK

zhigaag NA skunk.

SLEEP

nibaa VAI sleep.

SLOW

bekaa PC slowly.

SMALL

agaashiinyi VAI be small.

SNEAK

mawine'ige VAI sneak up to attack.

SNOW

zoogipon VII be snowing.

SOCK

azhigan NA sock.

ENGLISH - ANISHINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

SOMEONE

awiiya PR someone, a person.

SOMETHING

gegoon PR something, a thing.

SON

ningozis NAD my son. *Stem /-gozis-/.*

SOON

wiiba PC hurry, soon, early.

SPEAK

waabishkiiwemo VAI speak English. *See also zhaaganaashiimo.*

zhaaganaashiimo VAI speak English. *See also waabishkiiwemo.*

SPOON

emikwaan NA spoon.

emikwaanens NA teaspoon.

SPOUSE

niwiidigemaagan NAD my spouse, my partner. *Stem /-wiidigemaagan-/.*

STAND

niibawi VAI stand.

STAR

anang NA star.

START

ani- PV motion away from, start to.

maadanokii VAI start to work.

maajii- PV start, begin, start off.

STILL

geyaabi PC still, yet.

STOP

booni- PV stop, quite.

STORY

aadizooke VAI tell a legend, tell a traditional story.

aadizookewin NI legend, traditional story.

dibaajimo VAI tell a story.

dibaajimowin NI story.

ENGLISH - ANINAAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

STOVE

gizhaabikizigan NA stove.

SUGAR

ziinzibaakwad NI sugar.

SUN

giizis NA sun, moon, month.

mooka'am VII sun comes up.

SUNNY

waaseyaa VII be bright out, be sunny.

zaagaate VII be a sunny day, be shiny out.

SUNSET

bangishimon VII be sunset.

SWAMP

mashkiig NI swamp.

SWEATER

giishkijiiwayaan NI sweater. *See also nasweta.*

nasweta NI sweater. *See also giishkijiiwayaan.*

SWEETHEART

niinimoshenh NAD my sweetheart, my cross-cousin of opposite sex. *Stem /-iinimoshenh-/.*

TABLE

adoopowin NI table.

TAKE CARE

ganawendan VTI take care of s.t. *Stem /ganawendam-/.*

ganawenim VTA take care of s.o.

TASTE

minopo VTA like the taste of s.t. animate, s.o. *Stem /minopw-/.*

minopodan VTI like the taste of s.t. *Stem /minopodam-/.*

TEA

nitii NI tea.

TEAKETTLE

nitiiwakik NA teakettle.

TEASPOON

emikwaanens NA teaspoon.

ENGLISH - ANISHINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

TELL

aadizooke VAI tell a legend, tell a traditional story.
dibaajimo VAI tell a story.
wiindamaw VTA tell s.o.

TEN

midaasinoon VII be ten of them. *Stem /midaasin-/*.
midaasiwag VAI be ten of them. *Stem /midaasi-/*.
midaaso-dibai'igane VII be ten o'clock.
midaaswi NU ten.

TENT

babagiwayaanegamig NI canvas tent.
wiigiwaam NI tent.

THANK YOU

miigwech PC thank you.

THAT

a'a PR that [animate singular demonstrative]. *See also awe*.
awe PR that [animate singular demonstrative]. *See also a'a*.
awedi PR that over there [animate singular demonstrative]. *Also wedi*.
iwedi PR that (inanimate) over there. *Also i'iwedi, wedi*.

THEM

gewiinawaa PR they too, them too [third person plural pronoun].
wiinawaa PR they, them [third person plural pronoun].

THEN

aazha PC now, then, already.

THERE

awedi PR that over there [animate singular demonstrative]. *Also wedi*.
i'ima PC there. *Also imaa*.
iwidi PC over there.
wedi PC there.

THEY

gewiinawaa PR they too, them too [third person plural pronoun].
wiinawaa PR they, them [third person plural pronoun].

THING

gegoon PR something, a thing.

THINK

maaminonendan VT1 think about s.t. *Stem /maaminonendam-/*.
maaminonenim VTA think about s.o.

ENGLISH - ANINAAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

THIRTY

nisimidana PC thirty.

THIS

owedī PR this over here [inanimate singular demonstrative]. Also wedī.

THREE

nisinoon VII be three of them. Stem /nisin-/.

nisiwag VAI be three of them. Stem /nisi-/.

niso-dibai'igane VII be three o'clock.

niswi NU three.

THUNDER

animikiikaa VII be thundering.

TIME

daso-diba'igane VII be a certain time of the day.

dibai'igane VII be a time of the day [with combining form of number].

endaso-diba'igane= VII be a certain time of the day. Initial Change of daso-diba'igane.

weshkad PC a long time ago.

TODAY

noongom gaa-giizhigak VII today.

TOMORROW

awasiwaabang PC day after tomorrow.

waabang PC tomorrow.

TOO

gegiin PR you too [second person singular pronoun].

gegiinawaa PR you too [second person plural pronoun].

gegiinawind PR we too [first person plural inclusive pronoun].

geniin PR me too [first person singular pronoun].

geniinawind PR we too [first person plural exclusive pronoun].

gewiin PR him too, her too [third person singular pronoun].

gewiinawaa PR they too, them too [third person plural pronoun].

TOO MUCH

onzaam PC too much, excessive.

TOP

wagijiya'ii PC on top of it.

TOWARD

bi- PV in this direction, towards, to here.

ENGLISH - ANISHINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

TRAP

wanii'igan NI trap.

TREASURE

zaagitoon VT2 love s.t., treasure s.t. Stem /zaagitoo-/.

TRUE

debwe PC really, it's true.

TRY

gagwe- PV try.

TURTLE

miskwaadesi NA turtle.

TWELVE

midaaso ashi niizho-dibai'igane VII be twelve o'clock.

TWENTY

niishtana NU twenty.

TWO

niizhin NU two.

niizhinoon VII be two of them. Stem /niizhin-/.

niizhiwag VAI be two of them. Stem /niizhi-/.

niizho-dibai'igane VII be two o'clock.

UNABLE

giinawi- PV unable to, fail to.

UNCLE

nimishoome NAD my parallel uncle, my father's brother. Stem /-mishoomey-/.

UNDER

anaamiya'ii PC under it.

zhiibaaya'ii PC under it.

UNDERSTAND

nisidotan VT1 understand s.t. Stem /nisidotam-/.

UNPLEASANT

maazhi-giizhigad VII be bad weather, be an unpleasant day.

VERY

aapiji PC very, quite.

gichi- PV big, very.

ENGLISH - ANINAAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

VISIBLE

made- PV visible (in the distance).

VOLUNTATIVE

waa- PV want [voluntative prefix]. *Initial Change of wii.*

wii- PV want [voluntative prefix].

WANT

andawendan VTI need s.t., want s.t. *Stem /andawendam-/.*

andawenim VTA need s.o., want s.o.

waa- PV want [voluntative prefix]. *Initial Change of wii.*

wii- PV want [voluntative prefix].

WATER

nibi NI water.

WE

gegiinawind PR we too [first person plural inclusive pronoun].

geniinawind PR we too [first person plural exclusive pronoun].

giinawind PR we [first person plural inclusive pronoun].

niinawind PR we [first person plural exclusive pronoun].

WEATHER

ezhiweba= VII be a certain kind of weather, happen. *Initial Change of izhiwebad.*

izhiwebad VII be a certain kind of weather, happen.

maazhi-giizhigad VII be bad weather, be an unpleasant day.

WHAT

aan PC how, in what manner, why, what. *See also aaniin, aaniish.*

aaniin PC how, in what manner, why, what. *See also aan, aaniish.*

aaniish PC how, in what manner, why, what. *See also aaniin, aan.*

wegonen PR what.

WHEN

aaniinpai PC when? *Also aanapai.*

apai PC when.

WHERE

aandi PC where.

WHILE

baanimaa PC after a while.

megwaa PC while, during.

naanaage PC in a while.

WHITE PERSON

waabishkiiwe NA white person. *See also zhaaganaash.*

ENGLISH - ANISHINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

zhaaganaash NA white person. *See also* **waabishkiiwe**.

WHITE WOMAN

waabishkiiwekwe NA white woman. *See also* **zhaaganaashiikwe**.

zhaaganaashiikwe NA white woman. *See also* **waabishkiiwekwe**.

WHO

awenen PR who.

WHY

aan PC how, in what manner, why, what. *See also* **aaniin**, **aaniish**.

aaniin PC how, in what manner, why, what. *See also* **aan**, **aaniish**.

aaniish PC how, in what manner, why, what. *See also* **aaniin**, **aan**.

WILDERNESS

bagwajiya'ing PC in the wilderness.

WIN

bakinaage VAI win, beat in a competition.

WINDOW

waasechigan NI window.

WINDY

noodin VII be windy.

WOLF

ma'iingan NA wolf.

WOMAN

anishinaabekwe NA native woman.

ikwe NA woman.

naajikwewe VAI go after women.

waabishkiiwekwe NA white woman. *See also* **zhaaganaashiikwe**.

zhaaganaashiikwe NA white woman. *See also* **waabishkiiwekwe**.

WORK

anokii VAI work.

maadanokii VAI start to work.

WORRY

migoshkaadendan VTI be worried about s.t. *Stem* /**migoshkaadendam**-/.

WRITE

ozhibii'ige VAI write.

ENGLISH - ANINAABEMOWIN GLOSSARY

YES

eya PC yes.

YESTERDAY

awasinaago PC day before yesterday.

bijiinaago PC yesterday.

YET

gaa mashi PC not yet.

geyaabi PC still, yet.

mashi PC yet.

YOU

gegiin PR you too [second person singular pronoun].

gegiinawaa PR you too [second person plural pronoun].

giin PR you.

giinawaa PR you [second person plural pronoun].

giinitam PR you first, you next [second person singular pronoun].